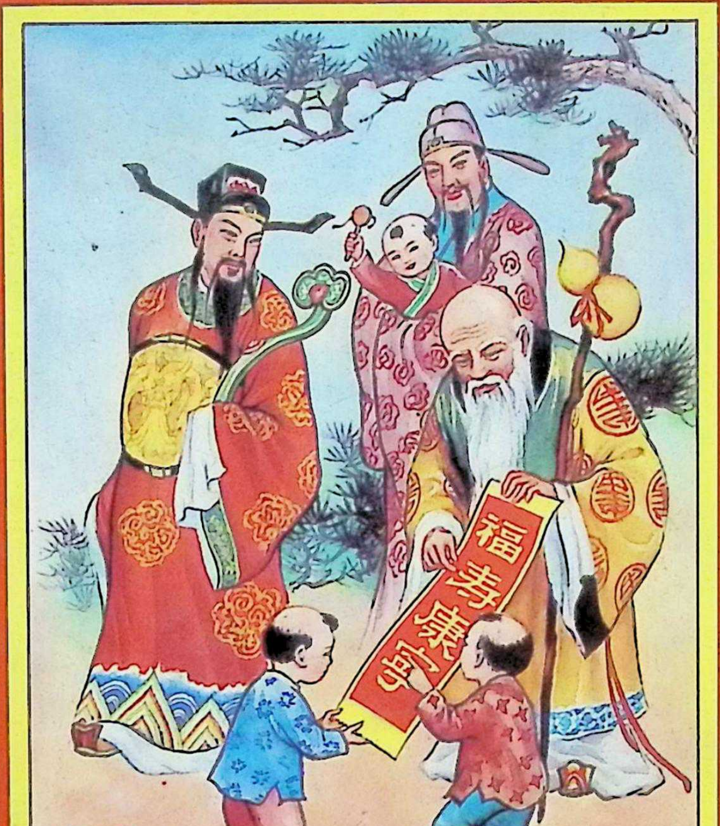
T'UNG SHU

The Ancient Chinese Almanac

Edited by Martin Palmer



Never before available in English,
a Chinese folk classic which has been annually
republished for over 1200 years.

1
2 t

T'UNG SHU

This is the first attempt to make available to readers in the West a major Chinese classic originating in the annual preparation of the Imperial calendar of celestial movements over 4000 years ago.

Containing an enormously wide variety of materials - from folk wisdom, practical farming advice and herbal medicine to astrology, divination, palmistry, numerology, moral teaching and astronomy - this ancient Almanac, the **T'UNG SHU**, is a vital and hitherto unexplored source book of Chinese traditional life which is as potent today as at any time since it became a bestseller over 1200 years ago.

Continually revised and modified by Taoists, Buddhists, Muslims and Christians, to reflect changing attitudes and new needs, the Almanac remains a guide to everyday life, and owning a copy is still widely believed to confer good fortune - which is one reason why millions of copies sell annually in Chinese communities around the world.

This, the first version of the **T'UNG SHU** in English, is partly a translation, but partly also an explanation and a description - for the Almanac cannot simply be translated. It is an extraordinary repository of Chinese culture and beliefs, fascinating to specialists and general readers alike.

With approximately 50 pages reproduced from the Almanac, many in two colours, the **T'UNG SHU** is a book that will appeal to everyone interested in the ideas, traditions and wisdom of China.

£9.95 net
in U.K. only

Ratna Book Distributors
Bag Bazar, KATHMANDU

T'UNG SHU

RIDER

T'UNG SHU

THE ANCIENT CHINESE ALMANAC

Edited and translated by
Martin Palmer
with Mak Hin Chung,
Kwok Man Ho and Angela Smith

RIDER & COMPANY
London Melbourne Auckland Johannesburg

181.11
PAL

Introduction, commentary and translation
copyright © International Consultancy on Religion,
Education and Culture 1986
All rights reserved

First published in 1986 by Rider & Co Ltd,
an imprint of Century Hutchinson Ltd,
Brookmount House, 62–65 Chandos Place, Covent Garden,
London WC2N 4NW
Reprinted 1986

Century Hutchinson Publishing Group (Australia) Pty Ltd
16–22 Church Street, Hawthorn, Melbourne, Victoria 3122

Century Hutchinson Group (NZ) Ltd
32–34 View Road, PO Box 40–086, Glenfield, Auckland 10

Century Hutchinson Group (SA) Pty Ltd
PO Box 337, Bergvlei 2012, South Africa

Set in Plantin
Printed in Great Britian by Chorley & Pickersgill Ltd,
Leeds and London
and bound by Anchor Brendon Ltd, Tiptree Essex

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
T'ung Shu: the ancient Chinese almanac
1. Philosophy
I. Palmer, Martin
181'.11 B128.T8

ISBN 0 7126 1127 4

181.11
P182t

CONTENTS

The Sections of the Almanac 6
Acknowledgements 8
Preface 9
Introduction 13
T'UNG SHU: THE ANCIENT CHINESE ALMANAC 41

Appendices

1 The Ten Heavenly Stems and the Twelve Earthly Branches 218
2 The Five Classics and the Four Books 220
3 Dynasties from *c.* 2000 BCE to the Present Day 223
Notes 224
Glossary 226
Bibliography 235
Index 238

THE SECTIONS OF THE ALMANAC

1 The Spring Festival Cow (Li Ch'un) and the Geomancer's Compass
2 Years and Astrological Characters of the Most Recent 100 Years
3 Charts for Finding Your Personal Fortune for the Year
4 The Nearest 200 Years Arranged According to Chinese and Western Calendars
5 The Twenty-Four Joints and Breaths of the Solar Year
6 Charts for Writing Two Auspicious Characters in 100 Ways
7 The Biscuit Poem of Liu Po Wen
8 The Yellow Emperor's Poem of the Four Seasons
9 The Time of Sunrise and Sunset of the Twenty-Four Joints and Breaths of the Year
10 Chang T'ien-shih, Catcher of Ghosts, and His Charms
11 The Twenty-Eight Constellations and Fortunes
12 Fortune-Telling by Physical Sensations
13 The Influence of the Five Elements in Childhood, followed by the Twenty-Six Malignant Gates
14 Auspicious and Inauspicious Dates for Various Activities
15 The Deity in Charge of You for the Year According to Your Age
16 Feng-shui Table of Auspicious and Inauspicious Dates
17 Charms to Protect the Foetus and Spirits Guarding the Stages of Pregnancy and Childhood
18 Old Mr Chou's Book of Auspicious and Inauspicious Dreams
19 The Weather and Farming Forecasts
20 The Auspicious and Inauspicious Stars for the Year
21 The Cup Divination Chart of T'u Ti (Earth God)
22 Coin Prediction
23. Master Yuan T'ien Kang's Chart of the Spiritual Value and Weight of Your Bones
24 Lucky Direction for the Day
25 T'ien Kang – Day Calculation on the Hand for Fortune-Telling
26 Child Talk (A Story about Confucius)
27 Etiquette in Writing Letters, Invitations, etc.
28 Pronunciation Guide to English

29 The Secret Book of Chu-ko's Spirit Calculation (Fortune-Telling from the Number of Strokes in Your Name)
30 Lists Showing Four Different Styles of Writing Certain Characters
31 Telegram Numeration of Chinese Characters
32 The Hundred Family Names
33 Miscellaneous Activities and Their Most Auspicious Times
34 How to Judge People by Their Habitual Actions
35 How to Run a Small Business
36 Chu Tzu's Guide to Managing Your Home
37 Traditional Medical Prescriptions
38 Astrological Charts
39 Eclipses, etc.
40 Physiognomy, Palmistry and Fortune-Telling
41 Song of Interpreting Personalities
42 Respected Master T'ung's Method of Calculating Days
43 The Yin and Yang Calendar Comparison Table for the Present Century (Pai Chung Ching)
44 Charms
45 The Sixty-Day Cycle of Heavenly Stems and Earthly Branches with the Good-Luck and Bad-Luck Stars
46 The Calendar
47 The Spring Festival Cow and the Geomancer's Compass for the Next Year

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

As editor I wish to express my thanks to my colleagues in the Chinese section team of the International Consultancy on Religion, Education and Culture (ICOREC). My partners in this endeavour were Barbara Cousins, Kwok Man Ho, Mak Hin Chung and Angela Smith. Together we have spent many months poring over the texts, arguing, researching, discussing and thoroughly enjoying ourselves. The following is the fruit of our labours.

We also owe an enormous amount to others within ICOREC, especially Liz Breuilly, Mr Chan and Ann Gibson. The facilities provided for us by Didsbury Faculty of Manchester Polytechnic, Manchester, and the School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London, were invaluable.

We should also like to thank the many Chinese friends and relations who gave time, trouble, food and advice. To them in particular we owe a great debt of gratitude.

Two Westerners also need mentioning. To Sandra Palmer and Carl Stefan Copley, our thanks. Without their comments we would have finished in half the time and have produced a book of much less value!

Finally to Oliver Caldecott and Sue Hogg – thanks. No team could ask for better, more enjoyable company. If only all publishers were such fun.

MARTIN PALMER

The 16th day of the fifth moon, the Yi Ch'ou year of the Ox
The feast day of Heaven and Earth's union. Birthday of Tathagatha Buddha
The 3rd day of July in the Year of Our Lord 1985
The feast day of St Thomas the Doubter (Thomarist)

PREFACE

A book, parts of which have a legendary history stretching back over 2250 years before Christ, which was commonly available in a printed form in the ninth century CE, and which is acknowledged by both Chinese and non-Chinese scholars to have exerted more influence over the lives of ordinary Chinese to the present day than the Confucian Classics, is obviously of considerable importance. Furthermore, any ancient book which has been extensively worked upon by shamans, Taoists, Buddhists, Moslems and Christians at various stages over the last 3000 years has a significance within the study of the history of religion. When you add to this the belief that the book is itself a powerful charm and a guide to everyday life and your personal fortune for every day – which is why just one of the current editions of the book sells over a million copies a year – then it is plain that the Chinese Almanac is no ordinary book. It is thus even more surprising that this is the first time a detailed examination of the book in any language other than Chinese has been published.

The Almanac is known amongst the Cantonese-speaking Chinese as the T'ung Shu – The Book of Myriad Things. (It is often referred to as the T'ung Sing. This is a pun in which the word for 'book' – Shu – is replaced by the word for 'good luck' – Sing. This turns the title into 'Good Luck in Everything', a truly auspicious title.) It is also sometimes referred to as the Calendar – the Li Shu. And these two titles give us the essence of the T'ung Shu. At its heart is the calendar, a careful attempt to give details of the lunar calendar and the seasons. This core of the book has a legendary history of over 4200 years, symbolizing and confirming the rulers' power in China for thousands of years. The annual compilation of the astronomical calendar was the duty of one of the most senior officials and his department within Chinese bureaucracy and the Court. The annual construction of the calendar still continues under the aegis of powerful astrologers in Hong Kong and Taiwan.

Around this calendar core has grown a unique and fascinating collection of other material. From extraordinarily diverse sources has come fortune-telling, divination, geomancy, herbal medicine, physiognomy, palmistry, charms and talismans, moral codes, dictionaries, predictions, legends, planets, auspicious and inauspicious days, numerology, astronomical details, telegram and telex charts, pregnancy charts and stories. Many of these sections have been published annually with the calendar for over 2000 years, whilst others have appeared in the last few decades. The Chinese Almanac therefore constitutes one of the most comprehensive and traditional collections of Chinese belief and practice in existence, and the fact that it still shapes and informs the lives of millions of Chinese today makes it a religio-cultural book of outstanding importance.

Nor is it a fossilized collection of folk wisdom, for the T'ung Shu is still changing and adapting today. Its origins lie, as we have noted, in the calendar, the Imperial Calendar. This was designed to aid agriculture. For many centuries the T'ung Shu was commonly known as the Farmers' Almanac, and most of its practical information was geared to weather, crops, sowing, harvesting and so on. While this still underpins the current T'ung Shu, which is issued each year, the explicitly agricultural side has been diminishing. For instance, the 1984 and 1985 editions from Hong Kong differ. In 1984 there was a two-page section on the proper times for planting and harvesting certain crops. In the 1985 edition this has been removed. Similarly, the abridged editions which have appeared in recent years carry material concerned with the calendar, divination, charms, geomancy and fortune-telling, but very little agricultural material, as they are designed largely for urban overseas Chinese.

Much of the Almanac remains the same each year. The basic processes of divination, horoscopes, fortune-telling, physiognomy, dreams, etc., continue from edition to edition. The roots of some of these sections lie over a thousand years in the past. They are proven, ancient methods. By a process of historical and literary criticism it is possible to detect hints as to the age of other aspects. Readers will find this with regard to the predictions in Section 7 – the Biscuit Poem of Liu Po Wen – which are remarkably accurate up to about the mid-1910s, but which then become very vague, indicating the approximate date of the main composition of the prediction. Another example is that of the scientific explanation of eclipses (Section 39). From study of nineteenth-century editions of the Almanac, it seems likely that this was inserted during the twentieth century as an attempt to respond to the impact of Western science and the resulting criticism of traditional ways.

As regards the rest of the book – those sections which are altered each year – the framework always stays the same while the details change. These parts – for instance Sections 3, 5, 16, 24 and most of 46 – are worked out each year by professional astrologers and astronomers such as Choi Pak Lai of Hong Kong, using methods taken from the last makers of the

Imperial Almanac – the Bureau of Astronomy of the Ch'ing dynasty (1644–1911). It is to these sections, particularly Section 46, the detailed day-by-day account of the year, that people turn to see whether such and such a day is 'lucky' for whatever they are planning to do.

While the T'ung Shu has often been mentioned by both Chinese and non-Chinese writers and scholars, strangely no one has previously translated it or sought to explore this unique storehouse of protoscience, religion, folk wisdom and practice. In presenting this, the first attempt ever to open up the Almanac to the non-Chinese world, we have had to bear a number of issues in mind.

First, there is the persistent difficulty of translating phrases and concepts of a philosophical and religious nature from one language and culture into another. This is not helped in this instance in that over the centuries various errors have crept into the Chinese text which have sometimes caused us great confusion. Added to this is the problem of finding apposite English terms to express complex Chinese traditions and beliefs. It is worth noting here that we have chosen to use the word 'he' in the translations although the Chinese text is often nonspecific. It was felt that although we might be accused of sexism, the use of 'he' accurately reflects the patriarchal presuppositions which are so evident in traditional Chinese life and thought.

Secondly, much of the material is well nigh incomprehensible to ordinary Chinese readers as it is esoteric in nature and requires the skills of a practitioner to reveal the coded meaning. In this we have been aided by two such Chinese colleagues. However, the difficulty of how to give a translation which is worth reading while simultaneously explaining and unravelling very intricate meanings and nuances was constantly with us.

In translating this book we worked in Cantonese, this being the dialect we had in common. Certain parts have been left in Cantonese phonetics where the names are not too important. However, elsewhere we have rendered the characters into the standard Wade-Giles system. We have not used pinyin as this is still largely unfamiliar. However, there are a few examples of pinyin in quoted passages.

The result is that this book is not a word-for-word translation of the Almanac of a particular year. There would be little point in doing this even if it were feasible as it would thus be, in part, out of date before it came off the press. Rather, what we have sought to provide is a mixture of part translation, part description, part explanation. In most cases, it is as much the method, say, of fortune-telling or divination, or the purpose, as in charms and 'Child Talk', as the actual text that is important. For this book will open up the doors into traditional Chinese folk beliefs and practice in a unique way. What it is not capable of doing, nor is it intended to do, is to provide a handbook by which non-Chinese readers can use the Almanac as a guide to daily living. For Chinese readers who have always found the Almanac fascinating but obscure the book will unlock large sections. But for the Western reader it will reveal a whole world of Chinese belief which has been largely ignored or scorned by Westerners. In a sense, it is the last great major Classic to be translated – not a Confucian or a scholarly Classic, but a folk Classic.

The reader will find that some sections contain full or substantial part translations, for example Sections 7, 18 and 26. Other sections contain only those parts in translation which are necessary in order to comprehend the function and use of that section, for example Sections 3, 27 and 34. Finally, a number of sections are of little importance in themselves and, although we have provided a description of them, no translation is given, for example Sections 30 and 39.

May we just remind readers that Chinese books of traditional style are read from what Westerners see as the back to the front. As far as the Chinese are concerned, of course, it is from the front to the back – and therein lies a good illustration! We have also adopted the use of the terms BCE and CE to replace the normal BC and AD. BC stands for 'Before Christ', whilst AD stands for *Anno Domini* – the Year of our Lord. Both these are overtly Christian terms giving specific acknowledgement to the figure of Jesus Christ. In the context of this book it is not appropriate to use these terms, so we have used instead the non-confessional format of BCE – Before the Common Era – and CE – Common Era. The terms BCE and CE simply replace those of BC and AD, hence this year is 1986 CE. In one instance we have used AD, but this is a personal context and relates to the various beliefs of the authors; it is also accompanied by the Chinese date and Buddhist festivals (see p. 8). We would also like to draw the reader's attention to the fact that, in the sections of translation, which are printed in italic, squared brackets contain editorial comment, whilst rounded brackets represent original material thus set apart in the Chinese text.

The Almanac, still in mass publication and used today, has a history of quite astonishing variety and it is to this that we now turn to gain a clearer understanding of The Book of Myriad Things.

INTRODUCTION

There is a scene very early on in the great eighteenth-century Chinese novel *The Dream of the Red Chamber*, by Cao Xueqin, in which two men, a gentleman called Zhen Shi-yin and a poor but ultimately successful scholar, Yu-cun, are discussing the scholar's journey to the capital city. When they have packed money and other such material needs, the following comment is made: 'The almanac gives the nineteenth as a good day for travelling.'[1]

This automatic reference to the Almanac gives some hint at the power and pervasiveness of this extraordinary book. Long commented upon, the Almanac has, however, never been translated in any detail or been regarded as having any great significance because it was termed 'superstitious'. Both Western and Chinese scholars have acknowledged its authority and role in Chinese life. For instance, C. K. Yang comments: 'It is generally recognised that, even in the modern period, the highly religious Almanac (Li-shu) enjoys a much wider sale in China than the "rationalistic" Confucian classics.'[2]

Yang's comments reflect the fact that in the Chinese communities in Southeast Asia, Hong Kong and Taiwan, and in Europe, North America and Australasia, the Almanac continues to exercise much if not all its former power. A visit to any Chinese bookshop in the months just before or just after Chinese New Year will show how popular the Almanac still is – for it enjoys pride of place in the shops and sells very well.

Yet it would be a mistake to think that it is understood fully by ordinary Chinese. The comment made by Mrs J. G. Cormack in 1922 still holds true today. 'It is not used or understood by ordinary people otherwise than as a calendar and recorder of days; but it is indispensable to the diviner.'[3] For most Chinese it is a closed book, opened for them by specialists when the need arises, such as for marriage, funerals, travel, opening new premises, choosing a house and so on. However, there are few homes which do not have a copy of the Almanac, for it is more than just a complicated book with a useful calendar. It is a force, a charm or talisman of great power. It is also so much part of virtually every Chinese person's background and home life that to be without this year's Almanac would be like forgetting to get dressed. Throughout our work on this book we only needed to be seen reading the Almanac, or even just carrying it in our hands, for Chinese people of all ages immediately to start up a conversation about it. This is no dead book, of interest only in a historical sense, such as the Classics. Its power is as great today as it ever was. Wolfram Eberhard writing of Taiwan in 1970 says: '. . . one book which has the widest distribution of all books: the folk almanacs. The almanacs, which have a venerable history of far more than a thousand years. . . . We are told that every Chinese would consult them before he started out on some trip, initiated an important business transaction, or thought of marrying.'[4]

The Almanac, filled as it is with a vast treasury of details, stories, tables, charms, predictions, divination and so on, is also popular as a basic source of knowledge and as a home tutor. Many Chinese children first learn to read or write Chinese from the Almanac. The advice and tables concerning such everyday matters as rearing children or sending telegrams in Chinese are still used in many households, while its dictionary function, in homes where few if any other dictionaries exist, is not to be ignored.

We shall return later to the theme of its role, place and ritual within the home, but it is important first to look at the strong and ancient history of the Almanac.

HISTORY

If tradition and the records of the classic *Shu Ching – The Book of Historical Documents* – parts of which go back to at least the tenth century BCE, are to be believed, then the Almanac, or rather the calendrical part of the Almanac, has been in constant publication for over 4200 years. The traditional first date for publication is 2256 BCE. The event is recorded in the *Shu Ching*, which states that, during the reign of the Emperor Yao, the Emperor commanded two officials or groups of officials to correlate the lunar and solar dates and to advise the ordinary people. 'He commanded Hsis and Ho, in reverent accordance with (their observation of) the wide heavens, to calculate and delineate (the movements and appearances of) the sun, the moon, the stars and the zodiacal spaces and so to deliver respectfully the seasons to be observed by the people.'[5]

It is this event which is traditionally seen as the first formal construction of the calendar – at least so far as Chinese concepts of recorded history go. There is great debate about the value and authenticity of those sections of the *Shu Ching* which deal with the period of the last two of the Five August Emperors (of which Yao was the fourth) and their successors, the Hsia dynasty (*c.* 2000–1523 BCE). Suffice it to say that, within traditional historical thought, Emperor Yao in 2256 BCE instituted a regular publication of the coming year's calendar, expressly for the sake of guiding the people. We know that it was a regular publication because later in the *Shu Ching*, Part 3 Book 4, Hsis and Ho are upbraided for failing, through drunkenness, properly to observe and record the sun, moon, stars and zodiacal spaces. This, according to the *Shu Ching*, has led to chaos: 'They have been the first to allow the regulations of heaven to get into disorder, putting far from them their proper business.'

There is, according to certain Taoist traditions, an even earlier date for the invention of the calendar. Before the Five August Emperors lived semi-human, semi-divine figures, sometimes called the Three August Ones. Credited with living for thousands of years, they taught humans the basic skills of civilization. It is to the first of these Three August Ones, Fu-hsi, that the invention of the calendar is ascribed. Fu-hsi is also credited with inventing marriage, writing, the civil administrative system and the Eight Trigrams. It is only with the later Five August Emperors such as Yao and Shu that specifics are added to these supposed general discoveries.

So we can see that legend at least places the first edition of what has become the fuller Almanac in 2256 BCE. Nor should it be lightly set aside. One of the constant major marks of Imperial authority and power was the right and ability to produce an accurate yearly calendar. By ordering and assisting agriculture, by giving warning of eclipses and movements in the heavens, the Emperor showed he was a true 'son of Heaven', ruling by and with the supreme authority of Heaven. In Chinese political thought, dynasties fell because Heaven had removed its approval and placed the mantle of responsibility on a more worthy line. Part of this mantle was the calendar. To be in control of the heavens and the seasons was to be part of the balance of forces – the yin and yang – of creation. To lose control was a sign of dangerous failure. One of the signs of territorial authority which the emperors gave to vassal kingdoms was the presentation of a copy of the calendar each year. With such deep symbolism inherent within the role of calendrical science, plus its totally agricultural basis, it is quite valid to believe that the calendar goes very far back into Chinese history.

The crucial role of the calendar as a sign of the ruler's right to govern echoes down through the records from the earliest times to today. When the last August Emperor, Shun, took over from Yao, the *Shu Ching* recalls that: 'He gave audience to the nobles of the East, putting in accord their seasons and months, and rectifying the days.'[6] The historian Ssu-ma Ch'ien, writing *c.* 100 BCE, records that T'ang, the overthrower of the Hsia dynasty and founder of the Shang dynasty, 'changed the initial month and the first day' of the calendar.[7] This idea of altering the calendar as a sign both of a new dynasty and of taking on the mantle of authority continues throughout Chinese history to our own century, as we shall see.

Similarly, the *Shu Ching* records that, at the fall of the Shang, Emperor Wu, the founder of the Chou dynasty (*c.* 1028 BCE), sought advice on how to rule and was informed of the importance of the regulation of the year through the calendar.[8]

When the Chou dynasty fell in 221 BCE to Cheng of the new Ch'in dynasty, Ssu-ma Ch'ien again records that there were many changes, amongst them that 'the start of the year was changed to the first day of the tenth moon'.[9]

With the appearance of Cheng, the first Emperor of what we would think of as China proper, we come to one of the most complete and interesting documents in this long history. For preserved virtually intact in the Five Classics, in the *Li Chi* (*The Record of Rites*), is a copy of the Imperial Almanac. It is difficult to date this copy, but it is thought to have been compiled by Lu Pu-wei (the famous Prime Minister of the Ch'in) around 250 BCE. Legend places it in the twelfth century BCE, but we can be fairly sure that a date between 300 and 250 BCE is more appropriate. The section of the *Li Chi* containing this detailed calendar is known as the *Yueh Ling*. Although its date of formal compilation is post-Confucian, it is very likely that contained within it are traditions and details which go back to pre-Confucian times. So much of the symbolism of direction, heaven, earth and colour is found in Chou- and Shang-dynasty material that it seems probable that much of the ritual associated with the *Yueh Ling* is of considerable antiquity. To give the reader some feel of the earliest extant copy of the Imperial Almanac, here are some of the details for the first month of spring. Readers may like to compare these with the translation and notes concerning the calendar and festivals section of the present Almanac (Section 46).

> In the first month of spring, the sun is in Shih, the star culminating at dusk being Zhan, and that culminating at dawn, Wei. Its days are Chia and Yi [the first two Heavenly Stems; see p. 34 below]. Its divine ruler is Thai Hao, and the spirit is Kau-mang. . . . The east winds resolve the cold. Creatures that have been torpid during the winter begin to move. The fish rise up to the ice. Otters sacrifice fish. The wild geese make their appearance. . . . In this month there takes place the inauguration of spring. Three days before this ceremony, the Grand Recorder informs the Son of Heaven, saying, 'On such and

> such a day is the inauguration of the spring. The energies of the season are fully seen in wood'. . . . He also orders the Grand Recorder to guard the statutes and maintain the laws, and (especially) to observe the motions in the heavens of the sun and moon, and of the zodiacal stars in which the conjunction of these bodies take place, so that there should be no error as to where they rest and what they pass over; that there should be no failure in the record of all these things, according to the regular practice of early times.[10]

Throughout its detailed prescription for the twelve moons, many of the features of our present Almanac are to be found, such as the Five Elements, the Ten Heavenly Stems and Twelve Earthly Branches, eclipses, the Twenty-Four Joints and Breaths (see p. 30), festivals and agricultural hints. As we have seen, the *Yueh Ling* sees itself as being heir to age-old traditions 'according to the regular practice of early times'. Here, in our earliest copy of the Almanac, over 250 years before Christ, the Almanac sees itself as merely the most recent in a long line.

In the writings of the historian Ssu-ma Ch'ien, the calendar appears very clearly as the powerbroker of Imperial politics as well as the centre of the best intellectual minds of the Han dynasty. Ssu-ma Ch'ien himself worked on the calendar and assisted in its thorough revision.[11] The following picture is found in his *Shih Chi – The Records of the Historian*. It relates to the early years of the Han.

> When Chang Ts'ang became minister of calculation, however, he set to work arranging and rectifying the calendar and the pitch-pipes which had been neglected up to this time. Since Kan-tsu had first reached Pa-shang in the 10th month, he continued the old Ch'in practice of beginning the new year with the 10th month and made no change. Calculating the cycle of the Five Elements Chang Ts'ang decided that the Han corresponded to a period dominated by the element Water and should therefore honour black, the colour of water. . . .
>
> When Chang Ts'ang became chancellor he brought his labours to completion and for this reason all who expound the pitch-pipes and the calendar for the House of Han base themselves upon Chang Ts'ang's work. Chang Ts'ang always loved books. There were none he did not examine and none he did not understand, but what he loved most were matters pertaining to the pitch-pipes and the calendar.[12]

Chang Ts'ang, however, was ousted by Kung-sun Ch'en who said the Han was dominated by the element Earth. As proof he predicted that a yellow dragon would appear in the next few years. Chang Ts'ang refuted this before the Emperor. A few years later just such a dragon was reported. Chang Ts'ang was dismissed, Kung-sun Ch'en appointed and he immediately installed a new calendar.

This small incident gives a sense of the status of the calendar and the authority it carried.

It is also recorded that during the decline of the Chou and rise of the Ch'in the concept of auspicious and inauspicious days arose. With the very sudden collapse of the Ch'in empire, this trend towards the inclusion of lucky days, evil stars and so on gained ground. The idea of order and harmony was now even more important, as the brutal Ch'in empire seemed to show that force and terror are not the ways of Heaven.

Even the normally stoic Confucians were beginning to be drawn into speculation about fortunes and prediction. We find the great Confucianist thinker Hsun Tzu in the early years of the Han dynasty (*c.* 250 BCE) writing thus: 'Heaven has its seasons, Earth its resources and man his government. Thus is man able to form a triad with Heaven and Earth. If man neglects his own role in the triad, and puts all his trust in Heaven and Earth with which he is part of the triad, he is making a terrible mistake.'[13] If man played his part and was in accord with Heaven and Earth, then all was well. Should this fail, then calamity.

But Hsun Tzu found it necessary to criticize sternly the drift away from bold principles towards the study of auspicious and inauspicious days, omens and divination. His protests were in vain. By the time of the T'ang dynasty (618–906 CE) the selection of auspicious and inauspicious days had come to dominate the calendar in the way that it still does today.

The invention of block printing in the early seventh century CE proved a massive boost to the use of the calendar and its development as an almanac. It seems likely that the Almanac was one of the first books published by printing and soon came to dominate the printed world. In 835 CE the writer Feng Su commented:

> In all the provinces of Szechwan and Huai-nan, printed calendars are on sale in the markets. Every year, before the Imperial Observatory has submitted the new calendars for approval and had it officially promulgated, these printed calendars have flooded the empire. This violates the principle that (the Calendar) is a gift of His Majesty.[14]

This evidence means that the Almanac has the longest continuous printed history of any book in the world: the British Museum has a printed edition of 877.

Having seen the development of the Calendar–Almanac in its first three thousand years as recorded by the Chinese, we obtain our next important piece of information not from a Chinese writer but from a Westerner, Marco Polo. In his *Travels* Polo, who visited and worked in China from 1275 to 1293 CE, describes on two occasions the role and function of the Almanac. Early on in the journey to the city of Kublai Khan, the modern-day Peking, Polo arrives at the city of Campichu in the province of Tanguth (in present-day Inner Mongolia). He reports that 'They employ an almanac, in many respects like our own, according to the rules of which, during five, four or three days of the month, they do not shed blood, nor eat flesh or fowl; as is our usage in regard to Friday, the Sabbath and the vigils of the saints.'[15]

Later on he describes the role of the astrologers at the Khan's court in Kambalu (Peking).

> There are in the city of Kambalu, amongst Christians, Saracens and Cathaians, about five thousand astrologers and soothsayers. . . . They have their astrolabes upon which are described the planetary signs, the hours and their several aspects for the whole year. The astrologers of each distinct sect annually proceed to the examination of their respective tables, in order to ascertain the course of the heavenly bodies, and their relative positions. They discover therein what the state of the weather shall be, from the paths of the planets in the different signs, and from this foretell the peculiar phenomena of each month. For instance, they predict that there shall be thunder and storms in a certain month, earthquakes; in another, strokes of lightning and violent rains; in another, diseases, mortality, wars, discords, conspiracies.
>
> As they find the matter in their astrolabes, so they declare it will come to pass; adding, however, that God, according to his good pleasure, may do more or less than they have set down. They write their predictions for the year upon certain small squares, which are called Tacuin, and these they sell, for a groat apiece, to all persons who are desirous of peeping into the future.
>
> Those whose predictions are found to be the more generally correct are esteemed the most perfect masters of their art, and are consequently the most honoured.
>
> When any person forms the design of executing some great work, of performing a distant journey in the way of commerce, or of commencing any other undertaking, and is desirous of knowing what success may be likely to attend it, he has recourse to one of these astrologers, and, informing him that he is about to proceed on such an expedition, inquires in what disposition the heavens appear to be at the time. The latter thereupon tells him, that before he can answer, it is necessary he should be informed of the year, the month, and the hour in which he was born; and that, having learned these particulars, he will then proceed to ascertain in what respect his horoscope corresponds with the aspect of the celestial bodies at the time of making the inquiry. Upon this comparison he grounds his prediction of the favourable or unfavourable termination of the adventure.

The importance of the Almanac, which Polo draws out, in deciding major events and auspicious days reflects exactly its current use. By now not only was there the Imperial Calendar – still very much in the style of the *Yueh Ling* – but there were also other versions, which were based upon the Imperial one but reflected the specific interests of particular groups. For instance, the Almanac Polo encountered in Campichu was almost certainly a Lamaist Buddhist one – hence the prohibition on meat. In Kambalu Polo records Christians, Moslems (Saracens) and Taoists/Confucians (Cathaians) at work. Each group produced its own Almanac, and particular lords and powerful religious centres also produced their own.

While Polo was in China, one of the most eminent mathematicians of the Yuan dynasty (1260–1368), Kuo Shou-ching (*c.* 1290), gathered together all the almanacs he could find and produced the first ever attempt at an overall system. This he published under the title *A System of Divination – Sou-shi-shuh*. With this publication, the pattern of the Almanac was set. Calendar, divination, advice, tales, charts, feng-shui (geomancy) and so on, side by side – one of the most important collections of official and unofficial Chinese religious beliefs available.

Under the Yuan dynasty, the Calendar was extensively reformed, but not by Taoists, Buddhists or Confucians. Into the complex history of the Almanac comes another faith – Islam.

As Polo records, the Mongols filled the main official posts with non-Chinese, as they did not trust the Chinese. Into positions of power came Mongols, Nestorian Christians and most particularly Moslems. With an empire stretching from Russia to Peking and taking in Persia en route, the influence of Islam was extensive and came to colour the later stages of the Mongol empire. It is recorded that in 1267 a Persian Moslem astronomer arrived in Peking with a collection of astronomical instruments. A major debate then took place between Islamic calendrical science – which only observes the lunar year – and the Chinese lunar/solar year (see pp. 29–31) – which was defended by the mathematician and inventor Kuo Shou-ching. The end result was a compromise. Keeping the old-style mixed calendar, the Yuan emperors appointed Moslems to run it and asked them to develop more sophisticated astronomical instruments. These beautiful instruments were made around 1300 CE – one set for Peking and one for Pingyang. The Peking set is still in situ, although some pieces were looted by the Germans after the Boxer Uprising in 1901 and only restored after the defeat of Germany in the First World War. Of the Pingyang set, more later.

Moslems continued to play an important role in the Bureau of Astronomy and the Department of Calendrical Studies until well into the seventeenth century. Indeed, for many people in the seventeenth century Islam and the calendar were so interconnected that legends placed the arrival of Moslem astronomers back at the very start of Islam. In 1657 CE, Wu Ming-hsuen, a Moslem astronomer of considerable power, stated that, '1058 years ago, eighteen men from the Western area' had come to China bringing Islamic calendrical science.[16]

Under Islamic guidance one might have expected that the 'magical' and auspicious aspects of the Almanac would have diminished. Not a bit of it. The pattern was too well set, and with the coming of the Ming dynasty (1368–1644 CE) it was further consolidated. The collection of almanacs published by Kuo Shou-ching was further expanded and published under Imperial edict with the title *Ta-t'ung – Official Almanac*. It is from this Ming title that the popular mass-produced almanacs (now, of course, lacking any Imperial model) derive their title *T'ung Shu*.

It must not be thought, however, that the criticisms of superstitious elements of the Almanac, voiced originally by Hsun Tzu, had ceased. During the T'ang period many attacks were made on it, particularly by Lu-ts'ai, the Minister of Rites under Emperor T'ai-tsung (627–50 CE). He sought to persuade the people to give up the habit of lucky days, etc., and return to the 'ancient ways'. In the Yuan period, Hsieh Ying-fang (*c.* 1350) included a penetrating critique of astrology, divination, feng-shui, physiognomy and lucky and unlucky days in his study *Pien Huo Pien – Disputes on Doubtful Matters*. Under the Ming, this was carried further by Ts'ao-tuan (*c.* 1400) and Wang Ch'uan-shan (*c.* 1650). In all cases it was Confucians who ridiculed the superstitious aspects of the Almanac, and Taoists and Buddhists who defended it.

Into this history now steps perhaps the strangest contributors to the Almanac – none other than Renaissance-inspired Christians from Europe in the guise of the Order of the Society of Jesus, better known as the Jesuits. For nearly two hundred years the Jesuits were to exercise immense power over the Bureau of Astronomy and the Department of Calendrical Studies. For two periods – 1629–64 and 1669–87 – Jesuits held the most senior post of Director of the Bureau of Astronomy, responsible not only for predicting eclipses, recording dates and such like, but also for determining auspicious days, lucky stars, Taoist, Buddhist and Confucian festivals, and so on. The very system by which the dates of the present Almanac are computed was devised by Jesuits. How did this come about?

The story begins with Matteo Ricci who pioneered Jesuit work in China. Although Nestorian Christianity (a heretical form common throughout Central Asia) had arrived in the seventh century and survived into the fourteenth century, Christianity had virtually no impact on the mainstream of Chinese thought. In the 1570s, as contact became possible through Portuguese traders, the Roman Catholic Church turned its attention to China and Japan. Foremost amongst the missionaries were the Jesuits. Highly trained and learned, they sought to draw into Christianity the best of each culture and faith they encountered. Matteo Ricci, for instance, spent twenty years studying the Chinese language and Classics, until he was more learned and skilled than many of the scholars. Into the somewhat arid world of Chinese scholarship he introduced not only Christianity but also the intellectual, astronomical and mechanical knowledge of the Renaissance. The Chinese scholars showed great interest in this knowledge and in Christianity, and by stages Ricci was allowed to draw closer and closer to Peking and the Imperial Court. In 1599, fifteen years after arriving in China, he was in Nanking, the capital of Southern China. He was invited to visit the astronomical observatory in the Imperial University. Here he found an extraordinary sight – beautiful astrolabes and gnomon wrought in delicate ironwork. Impressed, he sought details from his escort, who began to get agitated. Then Ricci made a discovery which began the extraordinary climb of the Jesuits to the directorship of the Bureau. The instruments were a complete mystery to the officials. They could not work them. Ricci soon discovered why. The instruments were aligned for use on the 36-degree line. Nanking stands on 32. These were none other than the Pingyang Islamic instruments of the Yuan dynasty, which had been brought south but never realigned.

When Ricci eventually succeeded in being allowed to work in Peking in 1602, he translated astronomical works and presented them to the Court, sure that if he were permitted to reform the calendar he could strike a blow at the superstitious practices which surrounded it and thus discredit Taoism and Buddhism. He died in 1610 without achieving this, but in 1613 one of the Chinese converts, and an important member of the Court, Leo Li, was able to get a revision of the calendar undertaken by Ricci's assistant, Sabatino de Ursis, owing to the failure by the Bureau in 1610 to predict accurately an eclipse. However, opposition within the Bureau prevented any use being made of it. In 1629 a Christian convert, Hsu Kuang-ch'i, was made Director of the Bureau, but opposition continued.

It was not until 1644 that the Jesuits consolidated their hold. Adam Schall, another Jesuit, had arrived in Peking in 1623 to carry on Ricci's work. By 1644 he was respected by the authorities. On 29 July he issued a challenge to the Bureau and Department. Could they accurately predict the exact time of an eclipse due to fall on 1 September? The Emperor allowed this challenge to take place and Schall's predictions, based on Western astronomy, were correct. Those of the Bureau and Department were not. Schall was appointed Director of the Bureau, and the calendar passed firmly into Christian control. Schall ran the Bureau, along reformed lines, until 1664, two years before his death. He was ousted by the traditionalists who returned to the old methods, but in 1669 a worthy successor, Ferdinand Verbiest, again challenged the traditional interpretation. He won against both Yang Kuang-hsien, a Taoist astronomer, and Wu Ming-hsuen, a Moslem. The Bureau returned to Jesuit hands.

Although Schall and Verbiest stand out both as individuals and as Directors, Jesuits continued to service the Bureau and Department from Verbiest's death in 1687 until the Society of Jesus was suppressed worldwide by the Pope in 1773.

How did the Jesuits cope with responsibility for lucky days, etc.? Ricci's dream had been to reform the calendar and its associated material. This did not happen. One Dominican writer (the Dominicans were never great fans of the Jesuits) recorded in his diary: 'Father Adam being president of the College of Mathematics, had the charge of, as well in Political as Religious respects, assigning lucky and unlucky days for everything they are to do (tho some excused the said Father as to this particular).' His duties, reported the monk, were to choose 'days and hours for everything except eating, drinking and sinning'.[17]

In other words, the Almanac, as it approached its reputed 4000th year of publication, had easily absorbed both Moslem and Christian assistance, but remained itself. However, serious challenges were beginning to appear on the horizon.

In 1644 the Ming dynasty fell to the Manchu horsemen who swept over the Great Wall and captured China. They founded the Ch'ing dynasty – the last Imperial dynasty of China. In the early days, particularly under K'ang Hsi (1661–1722), the Ch'ing brought prosperity to China. But soon the incursions of British imperialism moving out from India were felt. By the middle of the nineteenth century China was being 'opened up' by a mixture of missionaries, adventurers and gunboats. Vast peasant revolts took place, of which the T'ai-ping ('Great Peace') rebellion of 1848–64 is the most significant. This revolt, which came close to toppling the Ch'ing dynasty, and which at its peak controlled almost half of China, had a crude form of Protestant Christianity as its basis. Apart from its leader, Hung Hsiu-chuan, believing himself to be the younger brother of Jesus Christ, the movement showed its evangelical Christian roots in attacks on all 'idols' and 'superstition'.

Although it was a largely peasant-based revolution, this did not spare the Almanac. One of the constant planks of the T'ai-ping programme was the abolition of the old calendar and its replacement by the Western Julian-style calendar and the seven-day week. As at any other time when there was a change of dynasty, the calendar was altered. Unlike previous successful and unsuccessful claimants to the mantle of Heaven, the T'ai-ping threw out the collected wisdom and details of the old Almanac and produced instead Westernized versions without the details. When the revolution was finally suppressed, with terrible loss of life, the Almanac reappeared in the T'ai-ping areas without opposition.

The Protestant mission to China started within the first decade of the nineteenth century. By the end of the century there were more Protestant missionaries in China than in the rest of the world. Their impact was enormous, not least in terms of education and science. And they saw the Almanac, along with much else of Chinese religious life, as simply superstition or, at worst, the work of the Devil. With the impetus for reform and Westernization, the Almanac began to be challenged more seriously than ever before. The voices of Confucians, modernists, republicans and Christians were raised against much of China's traditional past.

Then, in 1911, the Ch'ing dynasty fell, to be replaced by a shaky republicanism headed – in theory – by Sun Yat-sen. With the end of Imperial rule (apart from an abortive attempt to found a new dynasty in 1915 and an attempted Ch'ing restoration in 1917) the Imperial Calendar ended. The new Republican government introduced the Western Gregorian-style calendar, and it appeared that the days of the Almanac were numbered. Yet, despite for the first time in its history the lack of an emperor, the Almanac continued to appear. Indeed, the astrologers continued to be employed by the various warlords who controlled Peking, and publication continued unabated. An attempt was made by the Nationalist government, in 1927, to ban the Almanac but this was not pursued with much enthusiasm, and soon the government were endorsing what they now termed the Nang Li – the Farmers' Calendar – thus distinguishing it from the official Western calendar. Now, instead of being Imperial and issued in the such and such year of Kuang Hsu, or whoever was the Emperor, the Almanac came out in the such and such year of the Republic. The Taiwanese-authorized Almanacs continue this, 1986–87 being the seventy-sixth year of the Republic.

In 1923 Mrs J. G. Cormack recorded that: 'The Almanac is prepared annually by the astrologers appointed by the ruler of the land, who have their offices near the east wall of the city of Peking in close proximity to the astronomical instruments set up by the Jesuit Fathers.'[18]

While all seemed relatively smooth, the most serious threat ever to the continuity and role of the Almanac was being set in motion. In March 1927 a young man published his first serious political and revolutionary analysis. The work was called *Report on an Investigation of the Peasant Movement in Hunan*. It was written for the fledgling Chinese Communist Party by one Mao Tse-tung. In chapter 7, entitled 'Overthrowing the Clan Authority of the Ancestral Temples and Clan Elders, the Religious Authority of Town and Village Gods, and the Masculine Authority of Husbands', the first hint of what lay in store for traditional Chinese beliefs was spelled out.

> While I was in the countryside, I did some propaganda against superstition among the peasants. I said:
>
> 'If you believe in the Eight Characters, you hope for good luck; if you believe in geomancy, you hope to benefit from the location of your ancestral graves. This year within the space of a few months the local tyrants, evil gentry and corrupt officials have all toppled from their pedestals. Is it possible that until a few months ago they all had good luck and enjoyed the benefit of well-sited ancestral graves, while suddenly in the last few months their luck has turned and their ancestral graves have ceased to exert a beneficial influence? The local tyrants and evil gentry jeer at your peasant association and say "How odd! Today the world is a world of committeemen. Look, you can't even go to pass water without bumping into a committeeman!" Quite true, the towns and the villages, the trade unions and the peasant associations, the Kuomintang and the Communist Party, all without exception have their executive committee members – it is indeed a world of committeemen. But is this due to the Eight Characters and the location of the ancestral graves? How strange! The Eight Characters of all the poor wretches in the countryside have suddenly turned auspicious! And their ancestral graves have suddenly started exerting beneficial influences! The Gods? Worship them by all means. But if you had only Lord Kuan and the Goddess of Mercy and no peasant association, could you have overthrown the local tyrants and evil gentry? The gods and goddesses are indeed miserable objects. You have worshipped them for centuries, and they have not overthrown a single one of the local tyrants or evil gentry for you! Now you want to have your rent reduced. Let me ask how you will go about it? Will you believe in the gods or in the peasant association?'[19]

During the 1930s and 1940s the Almanac's influence as well as production declined rapidly. War, Communism, Christian-style education, republicanism, science and the upsurge of rationalism cast heavy shadows of doubt over the book. The attraction of all things modern and/or Western meant it was a lean time for traditional beliefs. Many peasants still followed the old ways and used the Almanac, but increasingly they were criticized and urged to look to more modern forms of agricultural planning and production. Under both Chiang Kai-shek and Mao Tse-tung there was little space for the old-style calendar and its various functions.

In 1949 the Communist Party won the Civil War and established the People's Republic of China. While religious freedom was guaranteed, so was the right to propagate against religion. This, combined with a scientific materialist approach to agriculture, led to major attempts to eradicate the Almanac. Dr Joseph Needham records that in the early 1950s the Academia Sinica joined in: 'Until very recently, calendars produced in country towns always marked lucky and unlucky days, and not many years ago the Academia Sinica itself began to publish rural calendars in order to attack the superstition and to impart elementary astronomical information.'[20]

It is difficult to tell exactly when, if ever, production of the Almanac ceased in mainland China. Given the extent to which traditional religious practices have re-emerged in the recent softening of attitudes since the fall of the Gang of Four in 1976, it is perhaps unwise to assume that production of the Almanac ever ceased in China. At certain points we catch a glimpse of a peasantry who are far from abandoning the older practices. In an article published in the *People's Daily* in 1963, Ya Han-chang commented:

> Among the people of our country, especially people of the Han nationality [of pure Chinese ethnic background] such superstitious activities as fortune telling, physiognomy, and geomancy were quite prevalent in the past. While these, of course, are superstitions, they are not religious, being neither the activities of any religion nor any religions in themselves. Among the people of the Han nationality in our country, those who really believe in any religion and are the followers of any religion are numerically in the minority. But, among the peasants especially, those who believe in the existence of spirits and gods, in fate, and in such superstitions as fortune telling, physiognomy, and geomancy are still quite numerous. In view of this, we must be good not only at struggling against religious superstitions but also at struggling against all other kinds of ordinary superstitious activities.[21]

In 1977 an attempt was made to abolish the giving of the old calendar dates alongside the Western calendar in mainland Chinese newspapers. This has failed and in the mid-1980s the old dates and calendar reappeared.

The only apparent reference to the Almanac in the media of mainland China in recent years appears in the newspaper *Red Flag* on 16 February 1981. The following report is taken from the *Religion in the People's Republic of China*.

> Red Flag on 16.2.81 carried an article by Zhong Chuping entitled 'It is the glorious duty of publishing workers to publish more good books for the broad masses of peasants', in which the author discussed the necessity of publishing good reading material for the peasants who constitute eighty per cent of China's population. More good books are needed to meet the demand and also to strengthen ideological and political work in the rural areas. It is important, the article claims, to propagate the ideology of socialism and communism and to clear away the influence of feudal and bourgeois ideas. The author notes: 'We should also see that feudal and superstitious activities are quite common and absurd books and magazines and harmful novels are found everywhere. . . .'[22]

It seems highly probable that amongst the 'absurd books' is the Almanac. This is strengthened by the list given over and over again in the Chinese press of what it calls 'superstitious' practices. For most of those listed, the Almanac would be a basic source, without which they could not function. The *Guangming Daily* on 20 April 1981 gave a typical list:

> When we talk about feudal superstition, we usually mean telling fortunes by using the eight diagrams [*sic*], feeling a person's bones and looking at his appearance to forecast his future, practising geomancy, reading horoscopes in search of an elixir of life, exorcising spirits to cure illness, planchette-writing, offering sacrifices to the gods, beseeching gods to bestow children on people, offering prayers to gods to ward off calamities and to ask for rain and so on.[23]

The present Almanacs, published largely in Hong Kong and Taiwan, are enormously popular. The Hong Kong edition sells well over a million copies each year and the numbers are rising. Despite all that has happened in the last eighty-odd years, the Almanac has survived and its influence has spread beyond the confines of China itself to the many overseas communities. This very book itself testifies to the continuing significance of the Almanac, being the first book not in Chinese to deal exclusively with the Almanac.

Opposition to the Almanac, as we have seen, has long been in existence. The Confucian scholars from Hsun Tzu to this century have attacked its 'superstitious' role and its authority. Modern doctrines have now entered the fray but still the Almanac continues. Perhaps the despisal of the Communist authorities can be put into a succinct historical perspective. This chapter opened with the scene from *The Dream of the Red Chamber* in which the gentleman Zhen Shi-yin automatically referred to the Almanac for an auspicious day to travel. Lower down the same page comes this – the other side of the Chinese relationship with this most ancient book. A servant reports back to Zhen Shi-yin.

> 'The monk says that Mr Jia set out for the capital at five o'clock this morning, sir. He says he left a message to pass on to you. He said to tell you, "A scholar should not concern himself with almanacs, but should act as the situation demands", and he says there was not time to say goodbye.'[24]

THE ALMANAC AND ITS RITUAL

As we have seen, the Almanac, or rather its calendrical section in particular, is no ordinary book. Invested with, as well as investor of, Imperial authority, it was a symbol of the current ruler's right of office. As such, it became in certain circumstances the very embodiment of the Emperor. This passage from the *Ta Tai Li Chi* (*Records of Rites of the Older Tai*), *c.* second century BCE, reminds us succinctly of the authority of the calendar:

> Thereby the sage can be the master of Heaven and Earth, the master of the mountains and rivers, the master of the gods and spirits and the master of the sacrifices in the ancestral temple. The sage marks carefully the numbers of the sun and moon, so he can observe the motions of the stars and constellations, and thence arrange the four seasons in order according to their progressions and retrogradations. This is called the 'calendar'.[25]

The calendar was prepared annually by the Bureau and Department, and its construction was a highly formalized procedure. Once the Emperor had inspected it and declared it good, copies were made. These were then presented formally to all high-ranking officials and to vassal states when they rendered their annual tribute. Copies bound for the provinces were treated as though they were the Emperor himself. They were carried in sedan chairs and upon arrival they were placed upon a special chair while proclamations of loyalty were made before them, ending in later years with the ceremonial prostration and banging of the head upon the ground three times – the kowtow.

Although all the Imperial traditions have now gone, certain remnants of this attitude can still be found where the Almanac is still freely published. For instance, each New Year, Choi Pak Lai, the calendar maker of Hong Kong, presents a copy of his tables to the Governor of Hong Kong. The Almanac is received with due solemnity. While this is in fact a reversal of the Imperial pattern, it reflects the authority and status of the Almanac, even when the recipient is a foreigner.

In the homes of Chinese around the world, traditions as old as the Imperial ones still continue. As we saw earlier, the Almanac is one of the most common books, if not the most common book, to be found in Chinese homes since the Diaspora. Nor is it simply yet another book. It is a manifestation, a representative of that other world, Heaven, of which this world is but a poor reflection.

It is customary to buy the new Almanac about a month before New Year itself. The book is kept, carefully wrapped and placed upon a high shelf. To put the Almanac under a table, on the floor or in any other disrespectful position is to court trouble. On New Year's Eve, after supper when all the family are gathered (see Section 46, Major Festivals), the old Almanac is taken down from its hook by the main door. The new copy is then hung up by the red cord loop at the top of the book. Many people will wash their hands before doing so as a sign of respect. From then on until the next New Year's Eve, the Almanac will function as charm and talisman, calendar and dictionary, medical guide and planner. The old Almanac, so highly charged with spiritual power, is not just cast aside. Where possible, it is taken to a temple and presented to the monks or priests who will then burn it in one of the large incinerators kept in the temple grounds. These incinerators are used for burning Bank of Hell notes and other paper offerings used at funerals (see Ch'ing Ming in Section 46, Major Festivals). Thus the powers of the Almanac are released back to Heaven. Where no temple exists nearby, the Almanac will be carefully burned by the father of the family, in the back courtyard or garden – again just as happens at Ch'ing Ming or funerals when the family cannot use a temple.

We have already mentioned the use to which the Almanac is put for cures, in pregnancy and in physical distress. It is also used to prevent nightmares and other 'terrors of the night'. In all these situations, those handling the book will do so with clean hands and with a degree of reverence. This is no ordinary tome.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE CALENDRICAL CHARTS

For Christians BC and AD denote the central historical importance of Jesus. For Moslems, the dates start with Mohammed's journey to Medina in 622 CE. For Jews, the start of dating time commences with the traditional date of the Creation. For the Chinese, the traditional starting point for reckoning time is 2637 BCE. In this year the Prime Minister of the first of the Five August Emperors, Huang-ti, according to legend, worked out the cycle of sixty years which lies at the centre of calendrical study. For all calendrical study the major problem is the same. How can the solar year be reconciled with the lunar cycle?

The Chinese solution comprises the introduction, every two to three years, of an extra month. The reason for this is quite simple. The lunar year consists of the twelve moons. These periods last just over 29½ days each. In order to keep the days in each moon as full days, the year is made up of six 'small' months, each being 29 days long, and six 'big' months, each being 30 days long. This gives a grand total of 354. Some years will have seven 'big' months = 355 days, and every so often there will be seven 'small' months = 353. Thus, on average, each lunar year falls short of the solar year by 10, 11 or occasionally 12 days, per year. To bring the calendar in line again it is necessary to put in an extra month at roughly three-year intervals. These extra months (see Section 4 for examples from 1801 to 1885 CE) come after the month they are equated with. Hence, in 1984 the extra month was month 10, and thus it came after the normal month 10, and had 29 days. In 1987 the extra month is month 6, hence it comes after the normal month 6. Early on in Chinese astronomy it was noted that over a period of nineteen years the sun and moon move through a cycle, returning to their relative positions at the end of every nineteen years. It seems that this principle was discovered possibly as early as the Shang dynasty. From this, the astronomers were able to evolve a regular number of extra months. It was found that during each nineteen-year cycle, seven years needed an extra month. This principle was also discovered, later than the Chinese, by the Athenian Meton. His discovery was considered to be so important that the details of the Metonic Cycle were carved in the Temple of Athena on the Acropolis.

As for the solar year – the months being the province of the lunar cycle – it is subdivided in twenty-four two-week periods known collectively as the Twenty-Four Joints and Breaths. They start on the days when the sun is in the 1st or the 15th degree of each of the animal signs (see below, pp. 34–6). Those on the 1st are called 'principal terms'; those on the 15th 'divisional terms'. This set of twenty-four starts almost always on 4 February, with the Li Ch'un – the Beginning of Spring (see Section 5).

So far as the Almanac is concerned, Li Ch'un is the real start of the year – the agricultural year – and for this reason the very first page of the Almanac is concerned with the Li Ch'un festival (see Section 1). As the Twenty-Four Joints and Breaths never alter, barring one day or so, they are a very good grid reference for the year. Moreover, their names – Beginning of Spring, Coming of Rain, or Great Cold – are usually very precise forecasts of the type of weather to be expected. The terms originated in northern China, the original homeland of the Han people. As such they reflect the weather conditions of that area best. However, even if 'Great Snow' does not precisely describe the weather conditions in Hong Kong on and after 7 December, the spirit of the statement is certainly accurate!

The lunar year begins, of course, with New Year. Because of the fluctuation of a month in the calendar, New Year falls between 21 January and 20 February. Thus, Li Ch'un, the start of the solar year, can often fall before New Year and on occasion can fall twice within the same year. For instance, 1984–85 – the year of the Rat – had an extra month 10. New Year fell on 2 February 1984 with Li Ch'un coming as usual on 4 February. New Year 1985 did not come until 20 February; hence on 4 February, the 15th day of the twelfth moon of the year of the Rat, Li Ch'un came again. As Chinese astrology usually takes the start of a year from Li Chun, this means that anyone born on or after the 15th day of the twelfth moon in the year of the Rat (1984–85) is counted as having been born under the sign of the next year, the year of the Ox. Thus it is important when calculating Chinese year signs from English birthdates for anyone born between 4 and 20 February to check whether New Year fell after 4 February that year. Most of the Chinese festivals follow the lunar year, with two major festivals, Ch'ing Ming and the Winter Festival, following the solar year.

THE SIXTY-YEAR CYCLE

Apart from the nineteen-year cycle – the Metonic Cycle – the Chinese calendar has the sixty-year or Sexagenary Cycle. The same cycle is also used to construct a pattern of sixty days. The cycle is formed by the interaction of the two tables of the Ten Heavenly Stems and the Twelve Earthly Branches. In Appendix 1 there is a complete list of the cycle of sixty. This is achieved by taking the Ten Heavenly Stems and repeating them six times. The Twelve Earthly Branches are paired off with them and repeated five times – giving in each case the number 60. The first Heavenly Stem is Chia (甲). The first Earthly Branch is Tzu (子). The cycle of sixty thus always starts with Chia Tzu.

In counting the years the sixty-year cycle is of greater importance, both in fortune-telling and in recording the year, than the animal name of the year. This is shown, for instance, in the fact that the only really major celebration of a person's birthday comes when he is sixty, for he has thus completed one full cycle.

The Heavenly Stems are associated in pairs with the Five Elements. The Five Elements in turn are the primary and most essential expression of yin and yang. We shall thus need to make a short detour to look into these forces as they underpin so much within the Almanac.

YIN AND YANG AND THE FIVE ELEMENTS

The yin and yang are the basic opposing forces, negative and positive, dark and light, cold and hot, which keep the world and all life spinning. One of the most powerful descriptions of yin and yang appears in the *Huai Nan Tzu*. This was written down *c*. 120 BCE for the Prince of Huai Nan – hence its title, *The Book of Huai Nan*. It is a study of natural philosophy in twenty-one volumes.

> Before heaven and earth had taken form all was vague and amorphous. Therefore it was called the Great Beginning. The Great Beginning produced emptiness and emptiness produced the universe. The universe produced material-force which had limits. That which was clear and light drifted up to become heaven, while that which was heavy and turbid solidified to become earth. It was very easy for the pure, fine material to come together but extremely difficult for the heavy, turbid material to solidify. Therefore heaven was completed first and earth assumed shape after. The combined essences of heaven and earth became the yin and yang, the concentrated essences of the yin and yang became the four seasons, and the scattered essence of the four seasons became the myriad creatures of the world. After a long time the hot force of the accumulated yang produced fire and the essence of the fire force became the sun; the cold force of accumulated yin became water and the essence of the water force became the moon. The essence of the excess force of the sun and moon became the stars and planets. Heaven received the sun, moon and stars while earth received water and soil.[26]

Because they are opposites, they need each other to make the whole. Out of the tension (rather than the idea of harmony) which arises from this attraction of opposites comes the dynamic of life. Quite how old is the theory of yin and yang is very hard to determine. Certain writers see a foreshadowing in the sun and moon imagery of the ancient poems of the *Shu Ching* such as this one:

> O Sun, O Moon,
> From the East which come forth.
> O father, O mother,

> There is no sequel to your nourishing of me.
> How can he get his mind settled?
> Would he then respond to me, contrary to all reason?[27]

Similarly, the male–female divide, hinted at above, is also seen as a precursor of yin and yang. Whatever their roots, by the third to fourth centuries BCE the terms had developed their current meaning. It is important to stress that yin and yang are not gods or any form of divine power. Yin and yang are purely natural forces. As such they have been equated at times with the forces operating at the subatomic level in modern physics, for instance.[28]

From yin and yang came forth, and come forth, the Five Elements. This is succinctly captured by the Sung dynasty Confucian philosopher Chou Tun-yi (1017–73 CE), who wrote:

> The Non-Ultimate! And also the Great Ultimate (T'ai-chi). The Great Ultimate through movement generates the yang. When its activity reaches its limit, it becomes tranquil. Through tranquility the Great Ultimate generates the yin. When tranquility reaches its limit, activity begins again. Thus movement and tranquility alternate and become the root of each other, giving rise to the distinction of yin and yang, and these two modes are thus established.
>
> By the transformation of yang and its union with yin, the five agents of water, fire, wood, metal, and earth arise. When these five material-forces (ch'i) are distributed in harmonious order, the four seasons run their course.[29]

Again, the origins of the highly systematized relationships between the Five Elements cannot be easily traced. There is detailed mention of them in the *Shu Ching*. In the section known as *The Great Plan* (supposedly set in the changeover from the Shang to the Chou dynasty, *c.* 1025 BCE), the ruler inquires how Heaven wishes the world ordered. The reply quotes 'the great Plan with its nine Divisions' given to Emperor Yu.

First of all the divisions, the principles of order, come the Five Elements:

> First, of the Five Elements – The first is named water; the second, fire; the third, wood; the fourth, metal; the fifth, earth. (The nature of) water is to soak and descend; of fire, to blaze and ascend; of wood, to be crooked and to be straight; of metal, to obey and to change; while the virtue of earth is seen in seed-sowing and ingathering. That which soaks and descends becomes salt; that which blazes and ascends becomes bitter; that which is crooked and straight becomes sour; that which obeys and changes becomes arid; and from seed-sowing and ingathering comes sweetness.[30]

The earliest chart of their relationships is credited by Needham to Tsou Yen, who is believed to have lived between 350 and 270 BCE. However, the ancient nature of these elements is not doubted. The Five Elements are not linked to just the Ten Heavenly Stems. As we saw above in the quotation from the *Shu Ching*, they are also linked to tastes and characteristics. Below is a table of some of the main relationships of the Five Elements.

Element	*Heavenly Stems*	*Planet*	*Colour*	*Taste*	*Animal*
Wood	Chia and Yi	Jupiter	Green	Sour	Tiger and Rabbit
Fire	Ping and Ting	Mars	Red	Bitter	Horse and Snake
Earth	Wu and Chi	Saturn	Yellow	Sweet	Dog and Ox
Metal	Keng and Hsin	Venus	White	Acrid	Cock and Monkey
Water	Jen and Kuei	Mercury	Black	Salt	Pig and Rat

To return to the sixty-year cycle: the Ten Heavenly Stems go thus:

Chia	甲	(Wood)	Chi	己	(Earth)
Yi	乙	(Wood)	Keng	庚	(Metal)
Ping	丙	(Fire)	Hsin	辛	(Metal)
Ting	丁	(Fire)	Jen	壬	(Water)
Wu	戊	(Earth)	Kuei	癸	(Water)

The Twelve Earthly Branches function on three important and separate levels. As regards the sixty-year cycle, they work with the Ten Heavenly Stems to form each year's horoscope pairing. They also tie in exactly with the Twelve Creatures of the calendar, the animal signs. However, it is important to stress that each Earthly Branch character does not *mean* the specific creature of the animal cycle with which it is linked. Below we give the animal and its character, and the Earthly Branch name with which it is linked and its character. We also show a third function, for this set of twelve characters is also used to denote the Chinese 'hours' of the day. The Chinese 'hour' covers two ordinary hours, as can be seen in the table. Throughout the book we have placed speech marks around the word 'hour' when we are referring to Chinese 'hours'. The importance of the 'hours' will become obvious as we begin to get into the area of astrology and various other parts of the Almanac.

Animal sign		*Earthly Branch*		*'Hour'*
Rat	鼠	Tzu	子	11 p.m.–1 a.m.
Ox	牛	Ch'ou	丑	1 a.m.–3 a.m.
Tiger	虎	Yin	寅	3 a.m.–5 a.m.
Hare	兔	Mao	卯	5 a.m.–7 a.m.

Dragon	龍	Ch'en	辰	7 a.m.–9 a.m.
Snake	蛇	Szu	巳	9 a.m.–11 a.m.
Horse	馬	Wu	午	11 a.m.–1 p.m.
Ram	羊	Wei	未	1 p.m.–3 p.m.
Monkey	猴	Shen	申	3 p.m.–5 p.m.
Cock	雞	Yu	酉	5 p.m.–7 p.m.
Dog	狗	Hsu	戌	7 p.m.–9 p.m.
Pig	豬	Hai	亥	9 p.m.–11 p.m.

By a combination of six rounds of the Heavenly Stems (6 × 10 = 60) and five rounds of the Earthly Branches (5 × 12 = 60), the full sixty-year cycle is completed.

The traditional way of giving dates in the past was to find the pairing for a particular year and whose reign it fell in. For instance, 1815 was the Yi Hai year in the reign of Ch'ing Emperor Chia-ch'ing. This system only broke down when emperors ruled for more than sixty years. In the past six hundred years only one Emperor, K'ang Hsi (1662–1723), exceeded this number. Taiwan, however, is beginning to run into difficulties. It still counts from 1912 as the start of the Republic. In the Hong Kong Almanacs political diplomacy shows itself thus. From 1912 to 1948 the Republic dates are shown, ending in 1948 with the thirty-seventh year. From 1949 to the present no year number is shown. This leaves open the question of to whom the 'mandate of Heaven' has descended.

THE TWELVE CREATURES

A great deal is made in the West of the 'Chinese zodiac' and of the Twelve Animals or Creatures. Whole books have been written on the 'meaning' behind each creature and the resulting personality of those born under its sign. This is rather a shame, as the Chinese themselves ascribe little significance to these twelve creatures and view any details about personalities related to each creature as of little if any value. Other than giving some colour to the New Year festivities and a general title to the year (of far less importance than its Heavenly and Earthly characters), the creature of the year has no real function. As regards astrology and horoscopes, the creature is of relatively minor significance. The following are the basic characteristics associated with each creature:

Rat	Very smart and quick-witted
Ox	Grumbles a lot but is nevertheless big-hearted and long-suffering

Tiger	Keeps promises and becomes very angry if others break theirs
Rabbit	Clever and talented
Dragon	Full of energy and very direct
Snake	Never lets slip an opportunity
Horse	Hardworking
Ram	Quiet, restful, patient and gentle
Monkey	Full of energy and plans
Cock	Keeps time well and is always punctual
Dog	Keeps things to himself. Does not want to lead; prefers to follow
Pig	Always comfortable and very home-loving

There are numerous legends about why these twelve creatures are together. A basic theme is that the Jade Emperor wanted to hold a banquet for all the creatures of the earth. In some accounts, invitations were sent out to all creatures but only the twelve named above turned up. They were therefore honoured by being given a year and a time each. The order always starts with the Rat and ends with the Pig.

THE TWENTY-EIGHT CONSTELLATIONS

The Twenty-Eight Constellations exert a mysterious authority over the calendar and over fortune-telling. They occupy a prominent place in the detailed listings for each day in the calendar and are essential for cup divination, one of the most solemn of all divination methods (see Section 21). They exercise either great benevolence or evil and never change. Their roots lie deep in antiquity and legend. Each constellation has three names (see Section 11). The first is the name of a former soldier. Legend tells that when the Shang dynasty was dying a terrible civil war broke out between the decaying dynasty and the feudal state of Chou. The leading military genius, so legend recalls, was a Taoist, T'ung-t'ien Chiao-chu. To his aid came twenty-eight great warriors (although some accounts see them as attacking T'ung-t'ien Chiao-chu). They were eventually defeated by a heavenly army in a vast and terrible battle. However, to honour the twenty-eight who had fought so well, their names and spirits were taken to be given to the Twenty-Eight Constellations. So each constellation has its soldier's or, as it is normally known, its general's name.

Secondly, each constellation is associated with a creature. The list is given in Section 11 with the associated auspicious or inauspicious term. The origin of the names is not known, nor their date.

Finally, each constellation has a single character which is usually used (as in the calendar and in cup divination) to denote the constellation in question.

The Twenty-Eight Constellations are divided into four blocks of seven. In the calendar, they mark out exactly the seven days of the week (see below). Quite when the idea of a seven-day week entered the calendar is difficult to say. Some writers see it as beginning in the seventh century CE and as being due to the influence of the Nestorian Christians who are first officially recorded on the famous Nestorian monument erected in 781 CE in Shensi province as having entered China in 635 CE. Whether this is so or not, it is an interesting area of speculation.[31] The constellations are linked with the five planets plus the sun and moon and these too are then associated with the days of the week. The pattern is as follows:

Sunday	Constellations 4, 11, 18, 25	Sun
Monday	Constellations 5, 12, 19, 26	Moon
Tuesday	Constellations 6, 13, 20, 27	Mars
Wednesday	Constellations 7, 14, 21, 28	Mercury
Thursday	Constellations 1, 8, 15, 22	Jupiter
Friday	Constellations 2, 9, 16, 23	Venus
Saturday	Constellations 3, 10, 17, 24	Saturn

DIVINATION AND THE ALMANAC

The Almanac contains the largest number of divination methods gathered within one popularly available book. This, of course, is partly the reason for its popularity. As the reader will find, the methods are enormously varied. Some are for everyday use, such as those mostly associated with the chronomancy of the calendar. Others can be understood only with the help of a profesional fortune-teller or diviner. A few are considered of such power that dire warnings about their misuse are contained in the Almanac. It was this mass of material which constantly brought forth the wrath of the Confucians, who saw in it a dulling of humanity's intellect and sense of propriety. Yet it is this part which is of greatest interest to those who buy the Almanac, even if to most it is and remains a closed book. In the following example of how to find a horoscope Chinese readers may turn to the Almanac; but for Western readers, however, it is not possible here to lay out the entire system so that they can work out their horoscopes for themselves.

Essential to much of the divination and chronomancy is the system of the Eight Characters. In Western astrology the horoscope depends upon knowledge of the person's time, date and place of birth. In Chinese astrology it is necessary to know the 'hour', the day, the month and the year. Each of these will be known by their combination of the Heavenly Stem and Earthly Branch, giving eight characters in all. Take the example of a child born at 6 a.m. on the 13th day of the seventh moon, 1984. As has been shown, each year has a combination of the Heavenly Stems and Earthly Branches. Thus a child born in 1984 will have Chia and Tzu (甲子) as the first two characters of his horoscope. For the month, one of the Twelve Earthly Branches relates to each month. However, each year the relationship changes. In 1984 the first moon month was under the character Yin (寅). Thus the seventh moon month will be the seventh character along the list from Yin (counting Yin as the first character). This gives Shen (申). To find the Heavenly Stem it is necessary to place the list of stems alongside the twelve months, repeating the first two in the list in order to complete the required twelve. Again the list moves each year. In 1984 it started with Ping (丙). Thus the seventh character down the list was Jen (壬). So the two characters for the seventh month are Shen and Jen. Next comes the day. Each day is also accorded a Heavenly and an Earthly character. The sixty-year cycle here becomes the sixty-day cycle following exactly the pattern of the yearly cycle. The calendar gives the details for each day (Section 46). The 13th day of the seventh month in 1984 was Yi (乙) Hai (亥). Finally the 'hour': as the child was born at 6 a.m., the Earthly Branch is Mao (卯). Because the Heavenly Stem for the day is Yi (乙), then the Heavenly Stem for the 'hour' of Mao is Chi (己). In finding the Heavenly/Earthly correlation for the 'hour' a special chart is used.

With the resulting eight characters, namely:

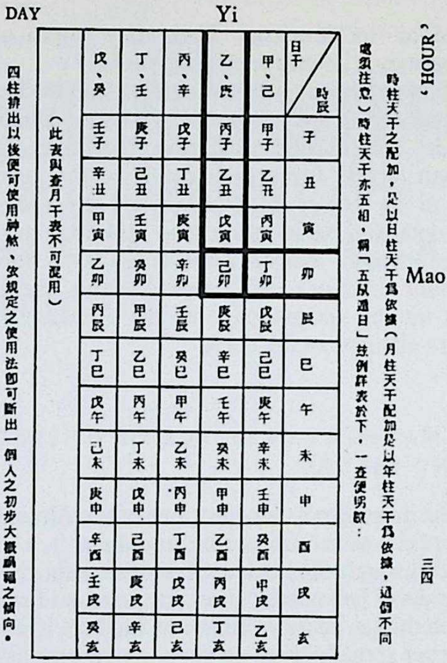
$$\left.\begin{array}{l}\text{甲 Chia}\\ \text{子 Tzu}\end{array}\right\}\text{ year }\left.\begin{array}{l}\text{壬 Jen}\\ \text{申 Shen}\end{array}\right\}\text{ month }\left.\begin{array}{l}\text{乙 Yi}\\ \text{亥 Hai}\end{array}\right\}\text{ day }\left.\begin{array}{l}\text{己 Chi}\\ \text{卯 Mao}\end{array}\right\}\text{ 'hour'}$$

it is possible for the inquirer to make basic use of the calendar himself, plus certain other simple fortune-telling and divination charts in the Almanac. Even more important, he can consult a fortune-teller who can delve more deeply.

Instances of fortune-telling/divination will be found in Sections 3, 8, 13 and 23.

GEOMANCY AND THE ALMANAC

The ancient Chinese science of geomancy – called feng-shui, which means 'wind–water' – is a persistent thread which runs


DAY
Yi
'HOUR'
Mao

時柱天干之配加，是以日柱天干爲依據（月柱天干配加是以年柱天干爲依據，這個不同處須注意）時柱天干亦五組，稱「五鼠遁日」，並列詳表於下，一查便明瞭：

日干／時辰	甲、己	乙、庚	丙、辛	丁、壬	戊、癸
子	甲子	丙子	戊子	庚子	壬子
丑	乙丑	乙丑	丁丑	己丑	辛丑
寅	丙寅	戊寅	庚寅	壬寅	甲寅
卯	丁卯	己卯	辛卯	癸卯	乙卯
辰	戊辰	庚辰	壬辰	甲辰	丙辰
巳	己巳	辛巳	癸巳	乙巳	丁巳
午	庚午	壬午	甲午	丙午	戊午
未	辛未	癸未	乙未	丁未	己未
申	壬申	甲申	丙申	戊申	庚申
酉	癸酉	乙酉	丁酉	己酉	辛酉
戌	甲戌	丙戌	戊戌	庚戌	壬戌
亥	乙亥	丁亥	己亥	辛亥	癸亥

（此表與查月干表不可混用）

四柱排出以後便可使用神煞、依規定之使用法即可斷出一個人之初步大概禍福之傾向。

三四

The Heavenly/Earthly correlations for the 'hour' of birth

through Chinese communities worldwide. For instance, in one middle-class suburb of Manchester, England, a family opened a new restaurant. Ill health, bad luck and a general sense of dis-ease affected the family. They therefore called in a geomancer. He swiftly identified the problem. The restaurant (with living accommodation above) was on a slope. Hence the good fortune simply ran past the building. This was resolved by putting a small, low brick block on the pavement beside the door. But, most inauspicious of all, across the way from the front of the building are three trees standing stark and alone. In geomantic thought these resemble the three candles lit at death and are thus a malignant force. If the family had controlled the land the trees were on, the problem could have been overcome by planting many more trees, thus turning the existing three into part of a defensive barrier against evil forces. However, this was not possible, so instead, special symbols of a tiger spear and a mirror using the Eight Trigrams were placed on the front of the building to ward off the evil. The family and their business have improved ever since, but essentially they should never have bought such a property without checking its feng-shui attributes. This could have been done, at least at a simple level, by using the charts contained in the Almanac. Then they would have had to consult an expert, a master of feng-shui.

Details of geomancy will be found on pp. 46–50. It does not have a great deal of space devoted to it in the Almanac because it is a very complicated technique. However, its inclusion, even when largely incomprehensible to the general reader, testifies to its power and authority. The sections largely concern details of burial, travel and building, and can at least give the ordinary reader some idea as to fortunate and unfortunate directions. With regard to this, the geomancer's compass on the second page of the Almanac is the most significant element in the book.

THE ALMANAC AS A REFLECTION OF TRADITIONAL LIFE AND VALUES

One of the most important functions of the Almanac is as a set of principles – as certain people would put it, a 'role model'. Scattered through the book are homilies, exhortations, moral tales, details of behaviour, letter etiquette, and so on. As with most such things, be they Chinese or English, it is unlikely that anyone ever actually lived up to, or could ever live up to, the expectations set out. However, within the traditional hierarchical and structured life of China until the recent past, it was possible to find families organized and run along the lines outlined in the homilies or moral tales. As such, the collection in the Almanac throws a light on traditional Chinese values and patterns of behaviour which is unique. From the highly philosophical discussions of K'ung Fu-tzu (Confucius) the infant prodigy (Section 26) to the details of how to live properly (Section 36), facets of Chinese life and values appear before us in story or proverb form. In considering these reflections of a now almost totally destroyed way of life, it is perhaps significant that in the abridged editions of the Almanacs which are now appearing it is these moralistic parts which have been dropped whilst the fortune-telling and divining parts have been largely retained.

Apart from the specific tales and homilies mentioned above, traditional patterns and values appear as a subcurrent throughout. In Section 18, on dreams, for instance, they form the normative matrix within which the dreams occur and are interpreted. In the calendar (Section 46) actions allowed and forbidden, plus details of certain of the festivals, reflect the type of society which was Imperial China. A fascinatingly intimate door is thus found in the Almanac, which leads us back to the style and format of traditional Chinese life.

T'UNG SHU

THE ANCIENT
CHINESE ALMANAC

10008
~~5008~~
डा. त्रिलोकी रमण रस्तोगी
कल्याणी रस्तोगी स्मारक
पुस्तकालय

Section 1

THE SPRING FESTIVAL COW (LI CH'UN) AND THE GEOMANCER'S COMPASS

The first page of the Almanac often confuses those who have only a passing knowledge of Chinese language and culture. For there at the top of the page is a picture of a cow being led by a young boy. Many take this to mean that this year is the year of the Cow! This is not the case, for this picture appears every year. It is in fact the Spring Festival Cow, the main figure associated with Li Ch'un – the Beginning of Spring. Each year some small detail of the picture changes, for this picture reflects the type of weather which the year will have.

For instance, if Meng Shan, the cowherd, wears shoes, then there will be plenty of rain. If he has bare feet, then it will be a dry year. If he is wearing his hat, then it will be a very sunny year. If his hat is on his back, then it will be cool.

The symbol of the cow harks back to the original ritual of spring when, during the Shang dynasty, cows were sacrificed. In many areas of China until recent years, paper models of the cow were burned, and up to the last century Fukien province still sacrificed a real cow or buffalo. The Almanac gives detailed instructions for making such a paper model including the length and the colour. In 1985 the cow had a light green head – meaning sickness in the spring.

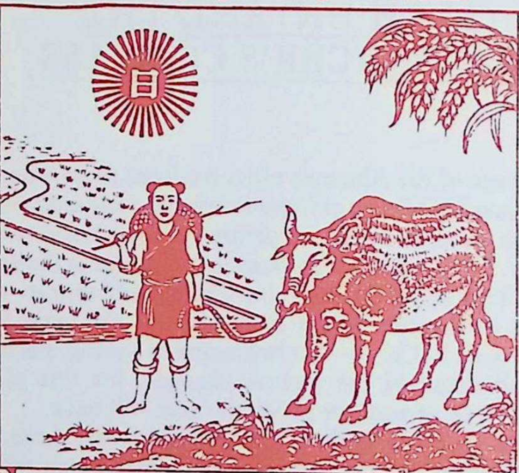
Around the picture and below it are the details of crops and health for the year. Ancient deities such as the Mother or Queen of Earth are invoked, for in this section we reach back to the earliest religious traditions of China.

At the very end of the calendar comes next year's Spring Cow (Section 47), with very brief details of the predictions for that year.

On the second page of the Almanac is the geomancer's compass and details concerning burial direction (see p. 48). These two, the cow and the compass, introduce the reader to the fascinating world of Chinese tradition and belief preserved in the Almanac. Below is a translation of the main blocks of Section 1. Following this, the roles of geomancy and the feng-shui compass are explained.

乙丑年春牛圖

乙丑春來瘟成禍　魏燕受損傷魯楚
時見牛羊遭災起　陌路流郎侍巡邏



早種高田勤工效　晚者收成八分禾
撫遞育桑牢竹斗　惟是種植滿倉籮

地母經

歲爲乙丑年　春瘟害萬民
偏傷於魯楚　多損魏燕人
高田宜早種　晚禾成八分
蠶娘爭鬧走　枝葉亂紛紛
濃父沿山釣　流郎陌上巡
牛羊多瘴死　春夏米如珍

地母曰

水牯田頭臥
犢子水中眠
桑葉初生貴
三伏不成錢
有人解言語
種植倍收全

春牛身高四尺長八尺尾長一
尺二寸頭青身黃腹白角耳尾
青脛黃蹄紅尾右撇口合籠頭
索用白色絲細欄子桑柘木牛
踏板縣門右扇芒神身高三尺
六寸五分童子像青衣白腰帶
平梳兩髻右在耳前左在耳後
罨耳用右手提行纏鞋袴俱無
鞭杖用柳枝長二尺四寸五色
絲結芒神早忙立於牛前右邊

本年太歲姓陳名泰
天干屬木地支屬土
納音屬金歲德在庚
歲德合在乙危月燕
值年鬼金羊管局週
子日虛宿未日張宿
爲暗金伏斷二日得
辛三龍治水十二牛
耕地三姑把蠶蠶食
一葉行雷人鄧元帥

春社	正月廿九日
秋社	八月十二日
冬至	十一月十一日
大寒	十二月十一日
分龍	五月初五日
初伏	六月初三日
中伏	六月十三日
末伏	六月廿三日

土王用事

二月廿八日
六月初三日
九月初七日
十二月初八日

YI CH'OU [1985] SPRING COW CHART

During this Yi Ch'ou year, in the springtime, things will not go well. This is the season for crop farming and rearing livestock. If the family is not well behaved during spring, then the people of the country will not have good yields. You will frequently see sickness amongst the livestock. Because of this you will have to work even harder to rear your livestock.

If you plant early and work hard, you will still only get 80 per cent of the fruits of your labour. The most you will collect this year is half your grain harvest. You will have more containers empty than full.

THE MOTHER OR QUEEN OF EARTH'S BOOK

During the spring there will be epidemics. This will bring ill fortune to many people. During this year it is wise to start farming earlier. Even the silkworms will leave because there will be no mulberry leaves. The fishermen will sit idly beside the mountains trying to fish. The strong men will all be unemployed and will hang around the fields. Most of the cows and sheep will die because of the epidemics. Therefore during spring and summer rice will be more precious, even though it too is scarce.

THE MOTHER OR QUEEN OF EARTH'S DAY

Even cows do not have work to do and are just standing around the fields. The cowherders have no work and sit around. You cannot even grow mulberry leaves. What you need is someone with knowledge to advise you, or you will not have a good harvest.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR BUILDING A SPRING COW MODEL

The Spring Cow is 4 feet tall, 8 feet long. The tail is 1 foot 2 inches long. The colour of the head is light green; the body, yellow; belly, white; horns, ears and tail light green; lower leg yellow and hooves red. The tail is facing right and pointing upwards. The mouth is closed. There is a silk thread tied through its nose. Meng Shen is guarding the field, 3 feet 6½ inches tall. The cowherdsman is wearing a light green coat of which the belt is white. The boy's hair is combed in two bunches. The right bunch is in front of the ear; the left is behind the ear. He uses his right hand to cover his ear. The boy's stick is 2 feet 4½ inches long. Meng Shen is standing in front of the cow, on the right-hand side.

FENG-SHUI IN THE ALMANAC

(Sections 1, 16 and 24)

Of all the ancient and distinctive arts or sciences of traditional China, feng-shui (literally, wind–water) is one of the most complex and, to the Western mind, both mystifying and mysterious. It has provoked Western commentators to condemn it – 'it retards progress, forbids railways, closes coal mines, prevents enterprise, checks new efforts at advancement, interrupts the free thought of the people, and keeps them wrapped in the mummy folds of ancient prejudices'[1] – while others have become euphoric – 'I say would God that our own men of science had preserved in their observatories, laboratories and lecture-rooms that same child-like reverence for the living powers of nature, that sacred awe and trembling fear of the mysteries of the unseen, that firm belief in the reality of the invisible world, and its constant intercommunication with the seen and the temporal. . . .'[2]

So what is this 'feng-shui' which causes such strong reactions? As we saw in the Introduction, Chinese thought posits the existence of two opposite but equal forces – yin and yang. These maintain a balance of opposition which keeps the world active. Yin and yang are within everything, even what Westerners would see as inert matter such as land. Furthermore, this world is seen as reflecting, less gloriously, the pattern of Heaven. Hills and valleys, rivers and lakes are where they are for good reasons. When humans come to live in or 'develop' an area, they must do so in balance with the forces already within the area, and with due regard for the heavenly influences which operate upon the landscape. To do other than this is to disrupt the balance, to disturb adversely the yin–yang equation and ultimately to bring some form of disaster upon the heads of those who have disregarded feng-shui. The art or science of divining the land is thus of great importance and it is this which has become known as feng-shui (wind and water being two symbols for yin and yang) or geomancy.

Nor is geomancy a thing of the past. It is found in all Chinese overseas communities and affects things as diverse as the construction and siting of the Hyatt Hotel in Singapore, the healing of a man in Taiwan (where currently some 20,000–30,000 geomancers work) and the positioning of new restaurants in England.

While buildings, roads and so on have been the main focus of geomancy, its most important role for most Chinese has been in the choice of a grave site for the family dead. If the fortunes of the living are adversely affected by dwelling in or creating bad feng-shui, then imagine the distress this causes the spirits of the dead. Furthermore, if the ancestors are unhappy because of bad feng-shui, then it is the living descendants who will suffer through the ancestors' withholding blessings. So it is vital that tombs have good feng-shui.

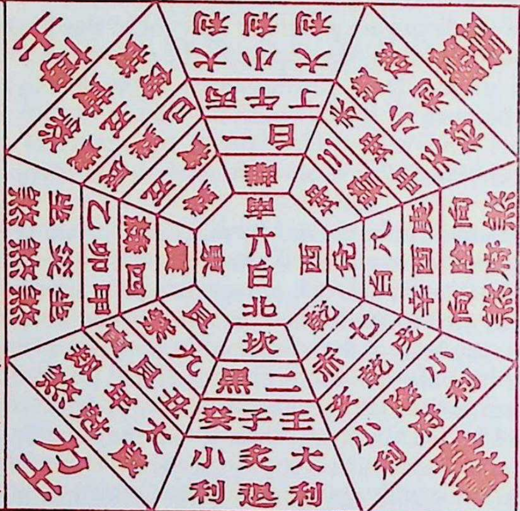
Bad feng-shui can be created by others not planning properly around you. This can be rectified by use of Eight Trigram mirrors. These small mirrors, often with a painting of a deity below, are circled by the Eight Trigrams – sets of three lines – which form the basis of the celebrated *I Ching*. These mirrors will reflect back the adverse properties of bad planning. For instance, across the road a building goes up with hard, straight lines aimed at your building. This is bad feng-shui, so you reflect it back. Recently in Hong Kong one government office had a large bank built opposite with dark mirror-glass in its windows. The day after it opened, the government office windows each had an Eight Trigram mirror defiantly reflecting the bad feng-shui back at the bank.

Although feng-shui has not been without its enemies in Chinese society (as reflected in the proverb: 'If you invite a geomancer to inspect your house, you might as well start packing to move now!'), it still exerts a fascination and a power. There is much common sense within it and its philosophical basis is an intriguing antidote to Western concepts. Yet it is a highly complex art and understood by very few Chinese. Hence, the pages devoted to it in the Almanac (Sections 1, 16 and 24) are few, although it is featured as the sole subject of the second page. Like physiognomy, the details given in the Almanac are sparse and very general. As with physiognomy, it is expected that those needing to apply it will seek an expert. Yet the basic ideas of feng-shui flow through the Almanac in terms of lucky directions, the stars, and so on, like an undercurrent.

The history of organized feng-shui is not as old as might be expected. Its first appearance is in the time of Confucius and just after. The *Li Chi* records that the dead were always buried pointing to the north because the north is seen as the female point of the compass and death and decay are the province of the female – yin – aspect of creation. Needham sees an early philosophical root of feng-shui in the words of Kuan Chung, a philosopher of the fifth century BCE. In his *Kuan Tzu* he writes thus:

乙丑流年事歛大利南北不利東方

太歲壓祭主（甲戌壬辰庚戌 癸未辛丑己未）六生人（下葬時 避之吉）


大利 小利 大利
丙午丁
一白
離
南
六白
東
西
北
坎
二黑
壬子癸
大利 炙退 小利
兌
八白
庚酉辛
向煞 陰府 向煞
乾
七赤
戌乾亥
小利 陰府 小利
坤
三碧
未坤申
艮
九紫
丑艮寅
太歲
力士
震
四綠
甲卯乙
坐煞 災煞 坐煞
巽
五黃
辰巽巳
博士

本年三煞在東五黃占巽歲破在未凡辰巽巳寅甲卯乙未八山忌用餘各山俱利

乙丑年山向月利圖

壬山	子山	癸山	丑山	艮山	寅山	甲山	卯山	乙山	辰山	巽山	巳山
造葬宜二三四七八十十一十二月利	造葬宜二三四七八十十二月利	造葬宜二三四七八十十一十二月利	造葬宜二三七八十十一月利	造葬正二三五七八九十十一十二月利	本年犯三煞不利	本年犯三煞不利	本年犯三煞不利	本年犯三煞不利	本年犯三煞不利	本年坐五黃不利	本年坐傍黃不利由丙兼巽無妨
丙山	午山	丁山	未山	坤山	申山	庚山	酉山	辛山	戌山	乾山	亥山
造葬宜正二四八九十十二月利	造葬宜正二四八九十十二月利	造葬宜正二四八九十十二月利	本年值歲破不利	造葬正二三四五八九十十一十二月利	造葬宜三四五八九十一十二月利	造葬宜正四五七八九十一月利	造葬宜正四五七八九十一月利	造葬宜正四五七八九十一月利	造葬宜正四五七八九十二月利	造葬宜正四五七八九十十二月利	造葬宜三七八十十二月利

> The earth is the origin of all things, the root and garden of all life; and the place where all things, the beautiful, the ugly, the good, the bad, the foolish and the clever, come into being. Now water is the blood and breath of the earth, flowing and communicating (within its body) as if in sinews and veins.[3]

Throughout the Han dynasty, books on feng-shui began to emerge for the first time, such as the *Chia Ching* (*The Book of Dwellings*). The philosopher Wang Ch'ung attacked the system in his writings *c.* 80 CE and various books on the siting of dwellings and tombs appear in catalogues of the time.

However, the consolidation and establishment of feng-shui seems to date from the Three Kingdoms period (221 CE) to the end of the Sung (1279 CE). Various 'classics' were written then which are still consulted today, such as the *Kuan Shih Ti Li Chih Meng* (*Master Kuan's Geomancer Indicator*) and the *Tsang Shu* (*Song of Geomancy*), credited to the semi-legendary poet and philosopher Kuo P'u in the fourth century CE. By the end of the Sung dynasty the shape and format of contemporary feng-shui had been cast.

Of the sections concerning feng-shui in the Almanac, the most important is on the second page. Here is the geomancer's compass – vital for the geomancer's art – and a fundamental outline of the philosophy behind feng-shui (note: north is down). The centre of the compass contains the five directions (the four points plus the centre, known as 'colour white'). Next come subdivisions of the compass, i.e. southeast, etc., based upon the Eight Trigrams. The third ring is the colours of the nine directions (the Eight Trigrams and centre) and the Five Elements. The fourth ring is the characters for each 'hour' of the day (Heavenly and Earthly combined). The fifth ring contains details of where good and bad spirits are currently dwelling. Finally, outside the ring are the four ancient compass bearings to tell you which way to set the compass.

Around the compass runs this inscription:

> *T'ai Sui [the Minister of Time in Heaven, equivalent to the planet Jupiter] is in charge. If you are born under year characters Chia Hsu, Jen Ch'en, Keng Hsu, Kuei Wei, Hsin Ch'ou, Chi Wei, then you should avoid anything to do with burial ceremonies this year.*
>
> *This year the positioning of disaster is in the east. Southeast has five yellow [meaning death and burial]. Southwest direction will shorten your life. Szu, Yin, Chia, Mao, Yi, Wei mountain directions cannot be used for burial this year.*

The general details given here are further elaborated and expounded in the other charts in the Almanac. Section 16 covers the relationships, day by day, between the sixty-day cycle and the auspicious and inauspicious directions. The chart has ten categories of activities related to feng-shui influences. They are:

1. A list of incompatible signs
2. Direction of happiness
3. Direction from which assistance will come
4. Direction for money
5. Direction of the good-luck star which can bless your door
6. Direction of long life
7. Direction for a business to be facing when opened on a particular day
8. Dangerous direction
9. Direction of the evil influence of the Five Ghosts
10. Direction through which death will enter your gates

Section 24 contains details of the feng-shui directions associated with each day in the sixty-day cycle, plus the good and bad stars associated with that direction.

Finally, aspects of feng-shui also appear in Master T'ung's chart as an aid to general fortune-telling associated with the calendar (see Section 42).

Feng-shui, as we have said earlier, is highly complex. In the few insights given here only a fleeting glance is possible. The role of the geomancer is very considerable and what is contained in the Almanac is designed to illustrate feng-shui's importance but not to seek to go too deeply into this art. Nevertheless, it affords the outsider a chance to see a few of its ideas and to sense its underlying importance.

Section 2

YEARS AND ASTROLOGICAL CHARACTERS OF THE MOST RECENT 100 YEARS

In Chinese astrology it is vital to know the Eight Characters of your horoscope, these being the characters for the year, month, day and 'hour' of your birth. Central to this, and used in many of the simpler divination or fortune-telling sections of the Almanac, are the Heavenly Stem and Earthly Branch for the year of your birth. Hence this early in the Almanac comes a quick reference chart of years with their Heavenly and Earthly signs and the year creature. The very structure of this section is revealing. The first line of each part carries an age – e.g., 33 years old. At the base of each part comes the date according to the Western calendar – in this instance 1953. Some Chinese are better able to recall their age than the Western year it equates to. However, two further points must be made. It may come as a surprise to some Westerners to discover that their age does not seem to correspond to the year given. Thus someone born in 1953 and reading this in 1986 would expect to find the number 33 as being his age. Instead he finds he is reckoned to be 34! The explanation is quite simple. According to Chinese practice you are already one year old at your birth. The second point worth noting is that on the seventh day of New Year everyone is automatically counted as being one year older. It is not common to celebrate individual birthdays in traditional families, with the exception of the sixtieth birthday, which marks the completion of the sixty-year cycle of Heavenly Stems (HS) and Earthly Branches (EB). (The chart overleaf starts with 1985.)

乙丑年百歲圖

一歲乙丑年肖牛一九八五
二歲甲子年肖鼠一九八四
三歲癸亥年肖猪一九八三
四歲壬戌年肖犬一九八二
五歲辛酉年肖雞一九八一
六歲庚申年肖猴一九八〇
七歲己未年肖羊一九七九
八歲戊午年肖馬一九七八
九歲丁巳年肖蛇一九七七
十歲丙辰年肖龍一九七六
十一乙卯年肖兔一九七五
十二甲寅年肖虎一九七四
十三癸丑年肖牛一九七三
十四壬子年肖鼠一九七二
十五辛亥年肖猪一九七一
十六庚戌年肖犬一九七〇
十七己酉年肖雞一九六九
十八戊申年肖猴一九六八
十九丁未年肖羊一九六七
二十丙午年肖馬一九六六

廿一乙巳年肖蛇一九六五
廿二甲辰年肖龍一九六四
廿三癸卯年肖兔一九六三
廿四壬寅年肖虎一九六二
廿五辛丑年肖牛一九六一
廿六庚子年肖鼠一九六〇
廿七己亥年肖猪一九五九
廿八戊戌年肖犬一九五八
廿九丁酉年肖雞一九五七
三十丙申年肖猴一九五六
卅一乙未年肖羊一九五五
卅二甲午年肖馬一九五四
卅三癸巳年肖蛇一九五三
卅四壬辰年肖龍一九五二
卅五辛卯年肖兔一九五一
卅六庚寅年肖虎一九五〇
卅七己丑年肖牛一九四九
卅八戊子年肖鼠一九四八
卅九丁亥年肖猪一九四七
四十丙戌年肖犬一九四六

四一乙酉年肖雞一九四五
四二甲申年肖猴一九四四
四三癸未年肖羊一九四三
四四壬午年肖馬一九四二
四五辛巳年肖蛇一九四一
四六庚辰年肖龍一九四〇
四七己卯年肖兔一九三九
四八戊寅年肖虎一九三八
四九丁丑年肖牛一九三七
五十丙子年肖鼠一九三六
五一乙亥年肖猪一九三五
五二甲戌年肖犬一九三四
五三癸酉年肖雞一九三三
五四壬申年肖猴一九三二
五五辛未年肖羊一九三一
五六庚午年肖馬一九三〇
五七己巳年肖蛇一九二九
五八戊辰年肖龍一九二八
五九丁卯年肖兔一九二七
六十丙寅年肖虎一九二六

六一乙丑年肖牛一九二五
六二甲子年肖鼠一九二四
六三癸亥年肖猪一九二三
六四壬戌年肖犬一九二二
六五辛酉年肖雞一九二一
六六庚申年肖猴一九二〇
六七己未年肖羊一九一九
六八戊午年肖馬一九一八
六九丁巳年肖蛇一九一七
七〇丙辰年肖龍一九一六
七一乙卯年肖兔一九一五
七二甲寅年肖虎一九一四
七三癸丑年肖牛一九一三
七四壬子年肖鼠一九一二
七五辛亥年肖猪一九一一
七六庚戌年肖犬一九一〇
七七己酉年肖雞一九〇九
七八戊申年肖猴一九〇八
七九丁未年肖羊一九〇七
八十丙午年肖馬一九〇六

八一乙巳年肖蛇一九〇五
八二甲辰年肖龍一九〇四
八三癸卯年肖兔一九〇三
八四壬寅年肖虎一九〇二
八五辛丑年肖牛一九〇一
八六庚子年肖鼠一九〇〇
八七己亥年肖猪一八九九
八八戊戌年肖犬一八九八
八九丁酉年肖雞一八九七
九十丙申年肖猴一八九六
九一乙未年肖羊一八九五
九二甲午年肖馬一八九四
九三癸巳年肖蛇一八九三
九四壬辰年肖龍一八九二
九五辛卯年肖兔一八九一
九六庚寅年肖虎一八九〇
九七己丑年肖牛一八八九
九八戊子年肖鼠一八八八
九九丁亥年肖猪一八八七
一百丙戌年肖犬一八八六

PING YIN [1986] DIAGRAM OF 100 YEARS OF AGES

Age	*HS*	*EB*	*Animal*	*Western date*
1 year old	*Ping*	*Yin*	*Year of the Tiger*	*1986*
2 years old	*Yi*	*Ch'ou*	*Year of the Ox*	*1985*
3 years old	*Chia*	*Tzu*	*Year of the Rat*	*1984*
4 years old	*Kuei*	*Hai*	*Year of the Pig*	*1983*
5 years old	*Jen*	*Hsu*	*Year of the Dog*	*1982*
6 years old	*Hsin*	*Yu*	*Year of the Cock*	*1981*
7 years old	*Keng*	*Shen*	*Year of the Monkey*	*1980*
8 years old	*Chi*	*Wei*	*Year of the Ram*	*1979*
9 years old	*Wu*	*Wu*	*Year of the Horse*	*1978*
10 years old	*Ting*	*Szu*	*Year of the Snake*	*1977*
11 years old	*Ping*	*Ch'en*	*Year of the Dragon*	*1976*
12 years old	*Yi*	*Mao*	*Year of the Rabbit*	*1975*
13 years old	*Chia*	*Yin*	*Year of the Tiger*	*1974*
14 years old	*Kuei*	*Ch'ou*	*Year of the Ox*	*1973*
15 years old	*Jen*	*Tzu*	*Year of the Rat*	*1972*
16 years old	*Hsin*	*Hai*	*Year of the Pig*	*1971*
17 years old	*Keng*	*Hsu*	*Year of the Dog*	*1970*
18 years old	*Chi*	*Yu*	*Year of the Cock*	*1969*
19 years old	*Wu*	*Shen*	*Year of the Monkey*	*1968*
20 years old	*Ting*	*Wei*	*Year of the Ram*	*1967*
21 years old	*Ping*	*Wu*	*Year of the Horse*	*1966*
22 years old	*Yi*	*Szu*	*Year of the Snake*	*1965*
23 years old	*Chia*	*Ch'en*	*Year of the Dragon*	*1964*
24 years old	*Kuei*	*Mao*	*Year of the Rabbit*	*1963*
25 years old	*Jen*	*Yin*	*Year of the Tiger*	*1962*
26 years old	*Hsin*	*Ch'ou*	*Year of the Ox*	*1961*
27 years old	*Keng*	*Tzu*	*Year of the Rat*	*1960*
28 years old	*Chi*	*Hai*	*Year of the Pig*	*1959*
29 years old	*Wu*	*Hsu*	*Year of the Dog*	*1958*
30 years old	*Ting*	*Yu*	*Year of the Cock*	*1957*
31 years old	*Ping*	*Shen*	*Year of the Monkey*	*1956*
32 years old	*Yi*	*Wei*	*Year of the Ram*	*1955*
33 years old	*Chia*	*Wu*	*Year of the Horse*	*1954*
34 years old	*Kuei*	*Szu*	*Year of the Snake*	*1953*
35 years old	*Jen*	*Ch'en*	*Year of the Dragon*	*1952*
36 years old	*Hsin*	*Mao*	*Year of the Rabbit*	*1951*
37 years old	*Keng*	*Yin*	*Year of the Tiger*	*1950*
38 years old	*Chi*	*Ch'ou*	*Year of the Ox*	*1949*
39 years old	*Wu*	*Tzu*	*Year of the Rat*	*1948*
40 years old	*Ting*	*Hai*	*Year of the Pig*	*1947*
41 years old	*Ping*	*Hsu*	*Year of the Dog*	*1946*
42 years old	*Yi*	*Yu*	*Year of the Cock*	*1945*
43 years old	*Chia*	*Shen*	*Year of the Monkey*	*1944*
44 years old	*Kuei*	*Wei*	*Year of the Ram*	*1943*
45 years old	*Jen*	*Wu*	*Year of the Horse*	*1942*
46 years old	*Hsin*	*Szu*	*Year of the Snake*	*1941*
47 years old	*Keng*	*Ch'en*	*Year of the Dragon*	*1940*
48 years old	*Chi*	*Mao*	*Year of the Rabbit*	*1939*
49 years old	*Wu*	*Yin*	*Year of the Tiger*	*1938*
50 years old	*Ting*	*Ch'ou*	*Year of the Ox*	*1937*

Age	*HS*	*EB*	*Animal*	*Western date*
51 years old	*Ping*	*Tzu*	*Year of the Rat*	*1936*
52 years old	*Yi*	*Hai*	*Year of the Pig*	*1935*
53 years old	*Chia*	*Hsu*	*Year of the Dog*	*1934*
54 years old	*Kuei*	*Yu*	*Year of the Cock*	*1933*
55 years old	*Jen*	*Shen*	*Year of the Monkey*	*1932*
56 years old	*Hsin*	*Wei*	*Year of the Ram*	*1931*
57 years old	*Keng*	*Wu*	*Year of the Horse*	*1930*
58 years old	*Chi*	*Szu*	*Year of the Snake*	*1929*
59 years old	*Wu*	*Ch'en*	*Year of the Dragon*	*1928*
60 years old	*Ting*	*Mao*	*Year of the Rabbit*	*1927*
61 years old	*Ping*	*Yin*	*Year of the Tiger*	*1926*
62 years old	*Yi*	*Ch'ou*	*Year of the Ox*	*1925*
63 years old	*Chia*	*Tzu*	*Year of the Rat*	*1924*
64 years old	*Kuei*	*Hai*	*Year of the Pig*	*1923*
65 years old	*Jen*	*Hsu*	*Year of the Dog*	*1922*
66 years old	*Hsin*	*Yu*	*Year of the Cock*	*1921*
67 years old	*Keng*	*Shen*	*Year of the Monkey*	*1920*
68 years old	*Chi*	*Wei*	*Year of the Ram*	*1919*
69 years old	*Wu*	*Wu*	*Year of the Horse*	*1918*
70 years old	*Ting*	*Szu*	*Year of the Snake*	*1917*
71 years old	*Ping*	*Ch'en*	*Year of the Dragon*	*1916*
72 years old	*Yi*	*Mao*	*Year of the Rabbit*	*1915*
73 years old	*Chia*	*Yin*	*Year of the Tiger*	*1914*
74 years old	*Kuei*	*Ch'ou*	*Year of the Ox*	*1913*
75 years old	*Jen*	*Tzu*	*Year of the Rat*	*1912*
76 years old	*Hsin*	*Hai*	*Year of the Pig*	*1911*
77 years old	*Keng*	*Hsu*	*Year of the Dog*	*1910*
78 years old	*Chi*	*Yu*	*Year of the Cock*	*1909*
79 years old	*Wu*	*Shen*	*Year of the Monkey*	*1908*
80 years old	*Ting*	*Wei*	*Year of the Ram*	*1907*
81 years old	*Ping*	*Wu*	*Year of the Horse*	*1906*
82 years old	*Yi*	*Szu*	*Year of the Snake*	*1905*
83 years old	*Chia*	*Ch'en*	*Year of the Dragon*	*1904*
84 years old	*Kuei*	*Mao*	*Year of the Rabbit*	*1903*
85 years old	*Jen*	*Yin*	*Year of the Tiger*	*1902*
86 years old	*Hsin*	*Ch'ou*	*Year of the Ox*	*1901*
87 years old	*Keng*	*Tzu*	*Year of the Rat*	*1900*
88 years old	*Chi*	*Hai*	*Year of the Pig*	*1899*
89 years old	*Wu*	*Hsu*	*Year of the Dog*	*1898*
90 years old	*Ting*	*Yu*	*Year of the Cock*	*1897*
91 years old	*Ping*	*Shen*	*Year of the Monkey*	*1896*
92 years old	*Yi*	*Wei*	*Year of the Ram*	*1895*
93 years old	*Chia*	*Wu*	*Year of the Horse*	*1894*
94 years old	*Kuei*	*Szu*	*Year of the Snake*	*1893*
95 years old	*Jen*	*Ch'en*	*Year of the Dragon*	*1892*
96 years old	*Hsin*	*Mao*	*Year of the Rabbit*	*1891*
97 years old	*Keng*	*Yin*	*Year of the Tiger*	*1890*
98 years old	*Chi*	*Ch'ou*	*Year of the Ox*	*1889*
99 years old	*Wu*	*Tzu*	*Year of the Rat*	*1888*
100 years old	*Ting*	*Hai*	*Year of the Pig*	*1887*

Section 3

CHARTS FOR FINDING YOUR PERSONAL FORTUNE FOR THE YEAR

This section contains the first fortune-telling procedure which, although quite difficult to use, is not regarded as being particularly accurate. It gives a feel for the coming year rather than precise details.

The first two pages consist of a chart of the Twelve Earthly Branches, which are known as 'houses'. The second page (see p. 57) carries the charts which enable the inquirer to find out which house he is in for the present year. Starting with the top half of the page, the inquirer finds the month of his birth: for example, month 10. This is in the top block. He then looks in the next block down. Here the inquirer finds his 'hour' of birth – say 12 midnight. He then traces across from right to left until he comes to the column below his month of birth. This then gives the 'house' he is in for this year. In the case of the example cited above, this is Wu (午). The inquirer looks back to the first page (see p. 56) and finds his house, Wu. This tells him which are his good stars and which are his bad stars for the year.

Turning back to the charts, he looks at the bottom set of blocks. In the top of these two he locates his house sign – in this case Wu. Then in the bottom right-hand block he finds the Earthly Branch for his year of birth – in this case Tzu (子). He traces across until he comes below his house sign. This then gives the key character for the fortune-telling. In the example cited above this is Szu (巳).

天官賜福

乙丑 金星 太陽 水星 流年

羅星 天官 火星

月將 氣星 太陰 木星 總圖

太陽四月初二巳時入	天官 福德 天乙	申	亡神 暴敗 天厄	太陰四月初一辰時入
太陽五月初四酉時入	地解	未	大耗 歲破 月殺 闌干	太陰五月初二丑時入
太陽六月初六卯時入	天廚 月德 文昌	午	小耗 咸池 六害 桃花	太陰六月初一申時入
太陽七月初八午時入	三台	巳	官符 五鬼 飛符 天哭	太陰七月初二卯時入
太陽三月初一午時入	將星 天解	酉	[illegible] 大殺 白虎 [illegible]	太陰三月初一巳時入
太陽八月初九巳時入	太陰	辰	貫索 勾神 歲殺	太陰八月初一酉時入
太陽二月初一子時入	天福 唐符 國印	戌	卷舌 寡宿 [illegible]	太陰二月初一酉時入
太陽九月初十戌時入	祿勳	卯	披頭 災殺 喪門	太陰九月初二寅時入
太陽戊子年十二月卅日辰時入	驛馬	亥	天狗 吊客	太陰戊子年十二月卅早子時入
太陽十二月十一申時入	歲合 玉堂	子	遭喪 病符 陌越	太陰十二月初二未時入
太陽十一月十一卯時入	歲駕 華蓋	丑	太歲 劍鋒 的殺 伏屍	太陰十一月初二丑時入
太陽十月十一申時入	天空 太陽 紅鸞	寅	晦氣 劫殺 孤辰	太陰十月初二未時入

孛星 計星 土星

子與丑合
寅與亥合
卯與戌合
辰與酉合
巳與申合
午與未合
子生肖鼠
丑生肖牛
寅生肖虎
卯生肖兔
辰生肖龍
巳生肖蛇
午生肖馬
未生肖羊
申生肖猴
酉生肖雞
戌生肖犬
亥生肖猪

立命定局眞法橫推直看

	大寒後生人作正月立命	雨水後生人作二月立命	春分後生人作三月立命	穀雨後生人作四月立命	小滿後生人作五月立命	夏至後生人作六月立命	大暑後生人作七月立命	處暑後生人作八月立命	秋分後生人作九月立命	霜降後生人作十月立命	小雪後生人作十一月立命	冬至後生人作十二月立命
子時生人	卯	寅	丑	子	亥	戌	酉	申	未	午	巳	辰
丑時生人	寅	丑	子	亥	戌	酉	申	未	午	巳	辰	卯
寅時生人	丑	子	亥	戌	酉	申	未	午	巳	辰	卯	寅
卯時生人	子	亥	戌	酉	申	未	午	巳	辰	卯	寅	丑
辰時生人	亥	戌	酉	申	未	午	巳	辰	卯	寅	丑	子
巳時生人	戌	酉	申	未	午	巳	辰	卯	寅	丑	子	亥
午時生人	酉	申	未	午	巳	辰	卯	寅	丑	子	亥	戌
未時生人	申	未	午	巳	辰	卯	寅	丑	子	亥	戌	酉
申時生人	未	午	巳	辰	卯	寅	丑	子	亥	戌	酉	申
酉時生人	午	巳	辰	卯	寅	丑	子	亥	戌	酉	申	未
戌時生人	巳	辰	卯	寅	丑	子	亥	戌	酉	申	未	午
亥時生人	辰	卯	寅	丑	子	亥	戌	酉	申	未	午	巳

乙丑年排定小限局

	子宮立命小限排在	丑宮立命小限排在	寅宮立命小限排在	卯宮立命小限排在	辰宮立命小限排在	巳宮立命小限排在	午宮立命小限排在	未宮立命小限排在	申宮立命小限排在	酉宮立命小限排在	戌宮立命小限排在	亥宮立命小限排在
子年生人	亥	子	丑	寅	卯	辰	巳	午	未	申	酉	戌
丑年生人	子	丑	寅	卯	辰	巳	午	未	申	酉	戌	亥
寅年生人	丑	寅	卯	辰	巳	午	未	申	酉	戌	亥	子
卯年生人	寅	卯	辰	巳	午	未	申	酉	戌	亥	子	丑
辰年生人	卯	辰	巳	午	未	申	酉	戌	亥	子	丑	寅
巳年生人	辰	巳	午	未	申	酉	戌	亥	子	丑	寅	卯
午年生人	巳	午	未	申	酉	戌	亥	子	丑	寅	卯	辰
未年生人	午	未	申	酉	戌	亥	子	丑	寅	卯	辰	巳
申年生人	未	申	酉	戌	亥	子	丑	寅	卯	辰	巳	午
酉年生人	申	酉	戌	亥	子	丑	寅	卯	辰	巳	午	未
戌年生人	酉	戌	亥	子	丑	寅	卯	辰	巳	午	未	申
亥年生人	戌	亥	子	丑	寅	卯	辰	巳	午	未	申	酉

辰宮立命

辰宮屬金　內藏翌軫角三宿　角宿六度入卯宮

詩云　命裡賜來一太陰　天德福星四面臨　喜逢世間多樂事　鼓瑟吹笙賀新人

本年太陰守命外逢紫微龍德天喜歲合拱照天德福星當頭雖內有貫索勾神天煞外有天厄捲舌諸凶亦當制伏立命在此當有乘龍跨鳳弄璋弄瓦之慶可喜可賀

作福隨意

巳宮立命

巳宮屬水　內藏星張翌三宿　翌宿六度入辰宮

詩云　五鬼官符招妖衆　黃幡白虎舞劍鋒　將星拱馬連天解　急斯堪興旺宅龍

本年五鬼官符守命外逢太歲白虎劍鋒血及相攻幸有將星天解拱照驛馬持朝或可化凶災於一二立命在此妨有雀角之爭及災耗之虞勿理閒事爲要

宜城隍太歲作福

午宮立命

午宮屬太陽　內藏井鬼柳星四宿　星宿三度入巳宮

詩云　神符猶死非制壹　惡煞危病無繞纏　二德太陽拱福照　三星在戶謹愼平

本年月德守命外有太陽天德福星歲合朝拱似乎甚吉無奈咸池小耗六害同宮寡宿絞煞刑刼相侵立命在此宜節食色遠小人親君子否則難免耗刼也

宜財神城隍天后作福

未宮立命

未宮屬太陰　內藏參井二宿　井宿廿五度入午宮

詩云　本宮周行盛耗災　狗吠蘭庭吊客來　喪白喜紅飄異色　孤辭難化地神迴

本年歲破大耗守命外逢太歲披頭黃幡天狗吊客相攻雖有地解同垣誠恐獨力難持寡不敵衆立命在此妨有疾病破耗及紅白大事修造等不宜多見

宜太歲華陀醫靈作福

The inquirer now turns through the following pages until he finds the specific predictions associated with Szu and there he will find the broad outline of the coming year's fortune (see opposite). It starts with a poem followed by an explanation.

Five ghosts, law breaking and many demons trouble you.
All around is evil; the White Tiger prowls and cutthroats are near.
Two auspicious stars come to your aid.
Using feng-shui, check your home and this will bring better fortune.

This year be careful in all you do because of the five ghosts and law breakers. You will be attacked by T'ai Sui [the planet Jupiter], the White Tiger and swords. Fortunately two auspicious stars will come and provide a little help. So be patient. Do not quarrel with friends or neighbours. Beware of accidents this year and generally mind your own business.

The last page of Section 3 gives the best dates to commence certain undertakings, such as beginning your studies or opening a business, as well as giving thanks. Most are concerned with the first time something is done in the New Year, when it is especially important to choose an auspicious day as this influences the rest of the year.

Section 4

THE NEAREST 200 YEARS ARRANGED ACCORDING TO CHINESE AND WESTERN CALENDARS

[HS = Heavenly Stem; name in bracket = Element;
EB = Earthly Branch.]

1801 6th year of Ch'ing dynasty
Emperor Chia-ch'ing
HS Hsin (Metal) EB Yu
Year of the Cock

1802 7th year of Chia-ch'ing
HS Jen (Water) EB Hsu
Year of the Dog

1803 8th year of Chia-ch'ing
HS Kuei (Water) EB Hai
Year of the Pig
Extra month after 2nd month

1804 9th year of Chia-ch'ing
HS Chia (Wood) EB Tzu
Year of the Rat

1805 10th year of Chia-ch'ing
HS Yi (Wood) EB Ch'ou
Year of the Ox
Extra month after 6th month

1806 11th year of Chia-ch'ing
HS Ping (Fire) EB Yin
Year of the Tiger

1807 12th year of Chia-ch'ing
HS Ting (Fire) EB Mao
Year of the Rabbit

1808 13th year of Chia-ch'ing
HS Wu (Earth) EB Ch'en
Year of the Dragon
Extra month after 5th month

1809 14th year of Chia-ch'ing
HS Chi (Earth) EB Szu
Year of the Snake

1810 15th year of Chia-ch'ing
HS Keng (Metal) EB Wu
Year of the Horse

1811 16th year of Chia-ch'ing
HS Hsin (Metal) EB Wei
Year of the Ram
Extra month after 3rd month

1812 17th year of Chia-ch'ing
HS Jen (Water) EB Shen
Year of the Monkey

1813 18th year of Chia-ch'ing
HS Kuei (Water) EB Yu
Year of the Cock

1814 19th year of Chia-ch'ing
HS Chia (Wood) EB Hsu
Year of the Dog
Extra month after 2nd month

1815 20th year of Chia-ch'ing
HS Yi (Wood) EB Hai
Year of the Pig

1816 21st year of Chia-ch'ing
HS Ping (Fire) EB Tzu
Year of the Rat
Extra month after 6th month

1817 22nd year of Chia-ch'ing
HS Ting (Fire) EB Ch'ou
Year of the Ox

1818 23rd year of Chia-ch'ing
HS Wu (Earth) EB Yin
Year of the Tiger

1819 24th year of Chia-ch'ing
HS Chi (Earth) EB Mao
Year of the Rabbit
Extra month after 4th month

1820 25th year of Chia-ch'ing
HS Keng (Metal) EB Ch'en
Year of the Dragon

1821 1st year of the Ch'ing
dynasty Emperor Tao-kuang
HS Hsin (Metal) EB Szu
Year of the Snake

1822 2nd year of Tao-kuang
HS Jen (Water) EB Wu
Year of the Horse
Extra month after 3rd month

近二百年中西紀年對照表

1801	嘉	六年	辛酉	肖雞	
1802	慶	七年	壬戌	肖犬	
1803		八年	癸亥	肖猪	閏二月
1804		九年	甲子	肖鼠	
1805		十年	乙丑	肖牛	閏六月
1806		十一	丙寅	肖虎	
1807		十二	丁卯	肖兔	
1808		十三	戊辰	肖龍	閏五月
1809		十四	己巳	肖蛇	
1810		十五	庚午	肖馬	
1811		十六	辛未	肖羊	閏三月
1812		十七	壬申	肖猴	
1813		十八	癸酉	肖雞	
1814		十九	甲戌	肖犬	閏二月
1815		二十	乙亥	肖猪	
1816		廿一	丙子	肖鼠	閏六月
1817		廿二	丁丑	肖牛	
1818		廿三	戊寅	肖虎	
1819		廿四	己卯	肖兔	閏四月
1820		廿五	庚辰	肖龍	
1821	道	元年	辛巳	肖蛇	
1822	光	二年	壬午	肖馬	閏三月
1823		三年	癸未	肖羊	
1824		四年	甲申	肖猴	閏七月
1825		五年	乙酉	肖雞	
1826		六年	丙戌	肖犬	
1827		七年	丁亥	肖猪	閏五月
1828		八年	戊子	肖鼠	
1829		九年	己丑	肖牛	
1830		十年	庚寅	肖虎	閏四月
1831		十一	辛卯	肖兔	
1832		十二	壬辰	肖龍	閏九月
1833		十三	癸巳	肖蛇	
1834		十四	甲午	肖馬	
1835		十五	乙未	肖羊	閏六月
1836		十六	丙申	肖猴	
1837		十七	丁酉	肖雞	
1838		十八	戊戌	肖犬	閏四月
1839		十九	己亥	肖猪	
1840		二十	庚子	肖鼠	
1841		廿一	辛丑	肖牛	閏三月
1842		廿二	壬寅	肖虎	
1843		廿三	癸卯	肖兔	閏七月
1844		廿四	甲辰	肖龍	
1845		廿五	乙巳	肖蛇	
1846		廿六	丙午	肖馬	閏五月
1847		廿七	丁未	肖羊	
1848		廿八	戊申	肖猴	
1849		廿九	己酉	肖雞	閏四月
1850		三十	庚戌	肖犬	
1851	咸	元年	辛亥	肖猪	閏八月
1852	豊	二年	壬子	肖鼠	
1853		三年	癸丑	肖牛	
1854		四年	甲寅	肖虎	閏七月
1855		五年	乙卯	肖兔	
1856		六年	丙辰	肖龍	
1857		七年	丁巳	肖蛇	閏五月
1858		八年	戊午	肖馬	
1859		九年	己未	肖羊	
1860		十年	庚申	肖猴	閏三月
1861		十一	辛酉	肖雞	
1862	同	元年	壬戌	肖犬	閏八月
1863	治	二年	癸亥	肖猪	
1864		三年	甲子	肖鼠	
1865		四年	乙丑	肖牛	閏五月
1866		五年	丙寅	肖虎	
1867		六年	丁卯	肖兔	
1868		七年	戊辰	肖龍	閏四月
1869		八年	己巳	肖蛇	
1870		九年	庚午	肖馬	閏十月
1871		十年	辛未	肖羊	
1872		十一	壬申	肖猴	
1873		十二	癸酉	肖雞	閏六月
1874		十三	甲戌	肖犬	
1875	光	元年	乙亥	肖猪	
1876	緒	二年	丙子	肖鼠	閏五月
1877		三年	丁丑	肖牛	
1878		四年	戊寅	肖虎	
1879		五年	己卯	肖兔	閏三月
1880		六年	庚辰	肖龍	
1881		七年	辛巳	肖蛇	閏七月
1882		八年	壬午	肖馬	
1883		九年	癸未	肖羊	
1884		十年	甲申	肖猴	閏五月
1885		十一	乙酉	肖雞	
1886		十二	丙戌	肖犬	
1887		十三	丁亥	肖猪	閏四月
1888		十四	戊子	肖鼠	
1889		十五	己丑	肖牛	
1890		十六	庚寅	肖虎	閏二月
1891		十七	辛卯	肖兔	
1892		十八	壬辰	肖龍	閏六月
1893		十九	癸巳	肖蛇	
1894		二十	甲午	肖馬	
1895		廿一	乙未	肖羊	閏五月
1896		廿二	丙申	肖猴	
1897		廿三	丁酉	肖雞	
1898		廿四	戊戌	肖犬	閏三月
1899		廿五	己亥	肖猪	
1900		廿六	庚子	肖鼠	閏八月

1823 3rd year of Tao-kuang
HS Kuei (Water) EB Wei
Year of the Ram
1824 4th year of Tao-kuang
HS Chia (Wood) EB Shen
Year of the Monkey
Extra month after 7th month
1825 5th year of Tao-kuang
HS Yi (Wood) EB Yu
Year of the Cock
1826 6th year of Tao-kuang
HS Ping (Fire) EB Hsu
Year of the Dog
1827 7th year of Tao-kuang
HS Ting (Fire) EB Hai
Year of the Pig
Extra month after 5th month
1828 8th year of Tao-kuang
HS Wu (Earth) EB Tzu
Year of the Rat
1829 9th year of Tao-kuang
HS Chi (Earth) EB Ch'ou
Year of the Ox
1830 10th year of Tao-kuang
HS Keng (Metal) EB Yin
Year of the Tiger
Extra month after 4th month
1831 11th year of Tao-kuang
HS Hsin (Metal) EB Mao
Year of the Rabbit
1832 12th year of Tao-kuang
HS Jen (Water) EB Ch'en
Year of the Dragon
Extra month after 9th month
1833 13th year of Tao-kuang
HS Kuei (Water) EB Szu
Year of the Snake
1834 14th year of Tao-kuang
HS Chia (Wood) EB Wu
Year of the Horse
1835 15th year of Tao-kuang
HS Yi (Wood) EB Wei
Year of the Ram
Extra month after 6th month
1836 16th year of Tao-kuang
HS Ping (Fire) EB Shen
Year of the Monkey
1837 17th year of Tao-kuang
HS Ting (Fire) EB Yu
Year of the Cock
1838 18th year of Tao-kuang
HS Wu (Earth) EB Hsu
Year of the Dog
Extra month after 4th month
1839 19th year of Tao-kuang
HS Chi (Earth) EB Hai
Year of the Pig
1840 20th year of Tao-kuang
HS Keng (Metal) EB Tzu
Year of the Rat
1841 21st year of Tao-kuang
HS Hsin (Metal) EB Ch'ou
Year of the Ox
Extra month after 3rd month
1842 22nd year of Tao-kuang
HS Jen (Water) EB Yin
Year of the Tiger
1843 23rd year of Tao-kuang
HS Kuei (Water) EB Mao
Year of the Rabbit
Extra month after 7th month
1844 24th year of Tao-kuang
HS Chia (Wood) EB Ch'en
Year of the Dragon
1845 25th year of Tao-kuang
HS Yi (Wood) EB Szu
Year of the Snake
1846 26th year of Tao-kuang
HS Ping (Fire) EB Wu
Year of the Horse
Extra month after 5th month
1847 27th year of Tao-kuang
HS Ting (Fire) EB Wei
Year of the Ram
1848 28th year of Tao-kuang
HS Wu (Earth) EB Shen
Year of the Monkey
1849 29th year of Tao-kuang
HS Chi (Earth) EB Yu
Year of the Cock
Extra month after 4th month
1850 30th year of Tao-kuang
HS Keng (Metal) EB Hsu
Year of the Dog
1851 1st year of Ch'ing dynasty
Emperor Hsien-feng
HS Hsin (Metal) EB Hai
Year of the Pig
Extra month after 8th month

1852 2nd year of Hsien-feng
HS Jen (Water) EB Tzu
Year of the Rat
1853 3rd year of Hsien-feng
HS Kuei (Water) EB Ch'ou
Year of the Ox
1854 4th year of Hsien-feng
HS Chia (Wood) EB Yin
Year of the Tiger
Extra month after 7th month

For details of the Heavenly Stems, Earthly Branches and 'Year of' from 1887 to 1986, see Section 2.

The dates of the emperors and Republic from 1886 to present day are as follows:

Hsien-feng ruled until 1861, that year being the 11th year of his reign.
In 1862 T'ung-chih ascended the throne and ruled until 1874, that year being the 13th year of his reign.
In 1875 Kuaug-hu ascended the throne and ruled until 1908, that year being the 34th year of his reign.
In 1908 Hsuan-t'ung ascended the throne and abdicated in 1911. 1911 is thus termed the 3rd year of Hsuan-t'ung.
From 1912 the Republic commences. The Almanac records the years from 1912 to 1948 as the years of the Republic. 1948 is thus the 37th year of the Republic.
From 1949 onwards the Almanac gives no details of year titles.

Section 5

THE TWENTY-FOUR JOINTS AND BREATHS OF THE SOLAR YEAR

The Twenty-Four Joints and Breaths of the year have already been mentioned in the Introduction (see p. 30). However, it is important to stress their significance as agricultural and climatic landmarks in the year. Below is a full list of the twenty-four with the meaning of their names. They start on 4 February with Li Ch'un and continue at regular fifteen-day intervals throughout the year.

As weather predictions they are generally very good and when the term 'peasant calendar' is used these days it is often the Twenty-Four Joints and Breaths that are being referred to.

Apart from featuring here and in two other, smaller charts, the details of the Joints and Breaths also appear with due prominence in the appropriate places in the calendar section of the Almanac (Section 46). Below them are details of the exact time when each particular Joint and Breath starts, for example, in 1985 Ku Yu fell on Day 1 of the Third Moon and started at 11.26 a.m.

Certain of the twenty-four have achieved fame as occasions for festivals or as marking the alternative New Year. Ch'ing Ming has become the day and name for one of the most important ancestor festivals. Li Ch'un, as we saw earlier in the book, is the astrologers' New Year and the date of the famous former festival of the Spring Cow. The four seasons are naturally marked by the Twenty-Four Joints and Breaths. The first, seventh, thirteenth and nineteenth are the starts of the seasons, with the tenth and twenty-second being the solstices and the fourth and sixteenth marking the equinoxes.

The role of the twenty-four as the basis of the calendar is clearly seen in the dynastic shifts of New Year over two thousand years ago. The *Yueh Ling* (see p. 16) starts its record of the year thus: 'In the first month of spring . . .'. In other words, here is evidence of why the astrologers have used Li Ch'un, the Beginning of Spring, as their New Year. Ssu-ma Ch'ien records in his epic *History* that, in 106 BCE, Emperor Wu opened a special 'House of the Calendar' on the first day of the New Year marking a new cycle of Heavenly and Earthly signs. This took place on the day of the winter solstice, and Ssu-ma Ch'ien records Wu as saying 'The period has revolved!

香港地區廿四節氣日出日入(光黑)
(當地時間)

立春	日出上午七點零一分	日入下午六點十四分
雨水	日出上午六點五十三分	日入下午六點二十二分
驚蟄	日出上午六點四十一分	日入下午六點二十九分
春分	日出上午六點二十六分	日入下午六點三十五分
清明	日出上午六點十二分	日入下午六點四十分
穀雨	日出上午六點正	日入下午六點四十六分
立夏	日出上午五點四十八分	日入下午六點五十二分
小滿	日出上午五點四十二分	日入下午六點五十九分
芒種	日出上午五點三十九分	日入下午七點零六分
夏至	日出上午五點四十分	日入下午七點十分
小暑	日出上午五點四十五分	日入下午七點十一分
大暑	日出上午五點五十二分	日入下午七點零八分
立秋	日出上午五點五十八分	日入下午七點正
處暑	日出上午六點零三分	日入下午六點四十九分
白露	日出上午六點零八分	日入下午六點三十四分
秋分	日出上午六點十二分	日入下午六點十九分
寒露	日出上午六點十七分	日入下午六點零四分
霜降	日出上午六點二十四分	日入下午五點五十一分
立冬	日出上午六點三十二分	日入下午五點四十三分
小雪	日出上午六點四十分	日入下午五點三十九分
大雪	日出上午六點五十分	日入下午五點四十分
冬至	日出上午六點五十八分	日入下午五點四十四分
小寒	日出上午七點零四分	日入下午五點五十五分
大寒	日出上午七點零五分	日入下午六點零四分

新加坡地區廿四節氣日出日入(光黑)
(當地時間)

立春	日出上午六點四十七分	日入下午六點五十分
雨水	日出上午六點四十六分	日入下午六點五十一分
驚蟄	日出上午六點四十四分	日入下午六點四十九分
春分	日出上午六點三十九分	日入下午六點四十六分
清明	日出上午六點三十四分	日入下午六點四十二分
穀雨	日出上午六點二十九分	日入下午六點三十八分
立夏	日出上午六點二十六分	日入下午六點三十六分
小滿	日出上午六點二十六分	日入下午六點三十七分
芒種	日出上午六點廿七分	日入下午六點三十九分
夏至	日出上午六點三十分	日入下午六點四十二分
小暑	日出上午六點三十三分	日入下午六點四十五分
大暑	日出上午六點三十五分	日入下午六點四十六分
立秋	日出上午六點三十五分	日入下午六點四十五分
處暑	日出上午六點三十三分	日入下午六點四十二分
白露	日出上午六點廿九分	日入下午六點三十六分
秋分	日出上午六點二十四分	日入下午六點三十一分
寒露	日出上午六點二十分	日入下午六點二十五分
霜降	日出上午六點十七分	日入下午六點廿一分
立冬	日出上午六點十七分	日入下午六點二十分
小雪	日出上午六點十九分	日入下午六點廿二分
大雪	日出上午六點廿四分	日入下午六點廿八分
冬至	日出上午六點三十一分	日入下午六點三十四分
小寒	日出上午六點三十九分	日入下午六點四十二分
大寒	日出上午六點四十四分	日入下午六點四十七分

It begins again!' The historian goes on to make the following observation: 'Those who calculated the calendar made of this date [25 November 105 BC] the first starting-point.'[1] Ssu-ma Ch'ien also states that at first the Han dynasty (founded 207 BCE) continued to use the Ch'in calendar, which started the year with the tenth month.

Thus it is possible to see that the Twenty-Four Joints and Breaths are very much the backbone of the whole of calendrical science.

HONG KONG CALENDAR OF THE TWENTY-FOUR TERMS OR DIVISIONS OF THE YEAR, THEIR START AND THEIR END

[Reading from top right to bottom left in right-hand column on p. 65.]

1. Li Ch'un – Beginning of Spring
Start at 7.01 a.m. End at 6.14 p.m.
2. Yu Shui – Constant Rain
Start at 6.53 a.m. End at 6.22 p.m.
3. Ching Che – Awakening of Insects
Start at 6.41 a.m. End at 6.29 p.m.
4. Ch'un Fen – Spring Equinox
Start at 6.26 a.m. End at 6.35 p.m.
5. Ch'ing Ming – Bright and Clear
Start at 6.12 a.m. End at 6.40 p.m.
6. Ku Yu – Rain Showers
Start at 6.00 a.m. End at 6.46 p.m.
7. Li Hsia – Beginning of Summer
Start at 5.46 a.m. End at 6.52 p.m.
8. Hsiao Man – Small Harvest
Start at 5.42 a.m. End at 6.49 p.m.
9. Mang Chung – Sowing of Seed
Start at 5.39 a.m. End at 7.06 p.m.
10. Hsia Chih – Summer Solstice
Start at 5.40 a.m. End at 7.10 p.m.
11. Hsiao Shu – Minor Heat
Start at 5.45 a.m. End at 7.11 p.m.
12. Ta Shu – Great Heat
Start at 5.52 a.m. End at 7.08 p.m.
13. Li Ch'in – Beginning of Autumn
Start at 5.58 a.m. End at 7.00 p.m.
14. Ch'u Shu – End of the Heat
Start at 6.03 a.m. End at 6.49 p.m.
15. Pai Lu – White Dew
Start at 6.08 a.m. End at 6.34 p.m.
16. Ch'iu Fen – Autumn Equinox
Start at 6.20 a.m. End at 6.19 p.m.
17. Han Lu – Cold Dew
Start at 6.17 a.m. End at 6.04 p.m.
18. Shuang Chiang – Frost
Start at 6.24 a.m. End at 5.51 p.m.
19. Li Tung – Beginning of Winter
Start at 6.32 a.m. End at 5.43 p.m.
20. Hsiao Hsueh – Minor Snow
Start at 6.14 a.m. End at 5.39 p.m.
21. Ta Hsueh – Great Snow
Start at 6.50 a.m. End at 5.40 p.m.
22. Tung Chih – Winter Solstice
Start at 6.58 a.m. End at 5.44 p.m.
23. Hsiao Han – Minor Cold
Start at 7.04 a.m. End at 5.55 p.m.
24. Ta Han – Great Cold
Start at 7.05 a.m. End at 6.00 p.m.

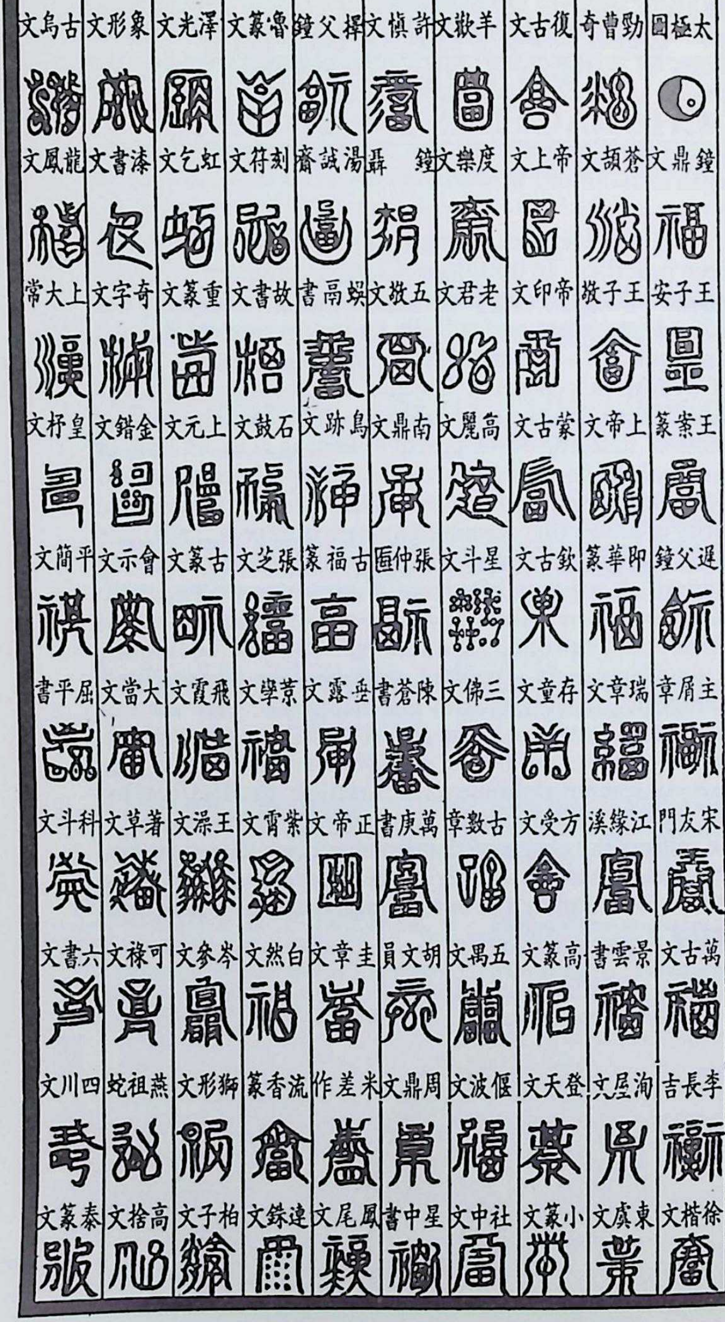
Section 6

CHARTS FOR WRITING TWO AUSPICIOUS CHARACTERS IN 100 WAYS

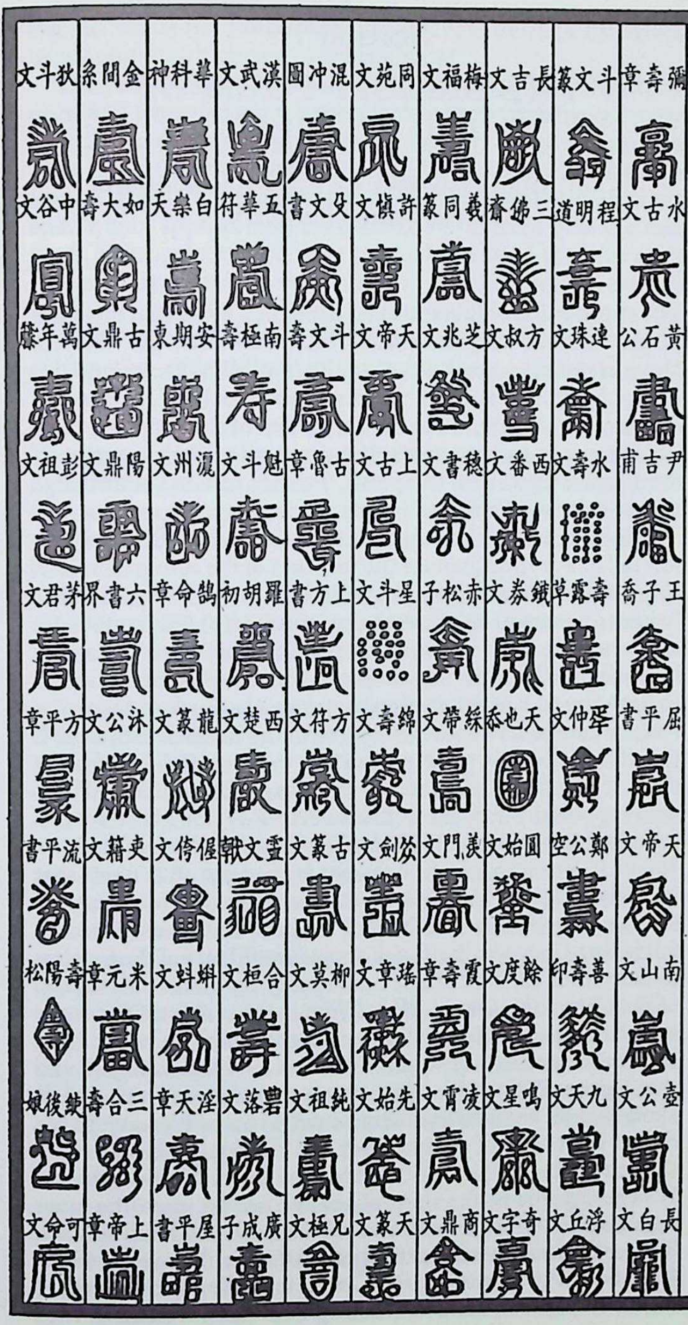
The power of the written character is known wherever writing has been practised. In traditional Chinese culture this reached considerable heights. Any piece of paper with writing on it was considered important and wilfully to destroy any writing was deemed the act of a barbarian. As we shall see in Section 10, the use of writing as a charm or talisman also features in Chinese thought. There are two other factors which come to bear on this section: first, the development of writing as an art form in itself, which leads to both a vast diversity of styles and an ability to utilize words in a decorative pattern; secondly, the authority or power that certain characters have because of their meaning. Certain characters are highly charged with meaning in a way which is difficult for non-Chinese to grasp. Their role is perhaps best seen in the following example: Chinese ceramic spoons or bowls will often have a character – or, in the case of a bowl, four characters – painted on them, usually associated with longevity, health, wealth and happiness; they are not there just for decoration. The idea of writing such words in English on spoons or bowls would never dawn upon the English – unless it is a commemorative article, in which case by dint of association it becomes more charged with meaning.

The calligraphy charts of the two characters shown on pp. 68–9 are often used as backdrops to domestic shrines or as decoration for temples. The two characters are 'good luck' and 'longevity'.

百福全圖


太極圖
鐘鼎文
王子安
王崇篆
遅父鐘
主屑章
宋友門
萬古文
李長吉
徐楷文
勁曹奇
蒼頡文
王子敬
上帝文
印華篆
瑞章文
江緣溪
景雲書
洵屋文
東虞文
復古文
帝上文
帝印文
蒙古文
欽古文
存童文
方受文
高篆文
登天文
小篆文
羊欷文
度樂文
老君文
高麗文
星斗文
三佛文
古數章
五禺文
偃波文
社中文
許慎文
鐘　鼎
五敬文
南鼎文
張仲匿
陳蒼書
萬庚書
胡文員
周鼎文
星中書
擇父鐘
湯誠齋
娛咼書
鳥跡文
古福篆
垂露文
正帝文
圭章文
米差作
鳳尾文
魯篆文
刻符文
故書文
石鼓文
張芝文
菉學文
紫霄文
白然文
流香篆
連錸文
澤光文
虹乞文
重篆文
上元文
古篆文
飛霞文
王淥文
岑参文
獅形文
柏子文
象形文
漆書文
奇字文
金錯文
會示文
大當文
著草文
可祿文
燕祖蛇
高捨文
古烏文
龍鳳文
上大常
皇杼文
平簡文
屈平書
科斗文
六書文
四川文
泰篆文

百壽全圖


彌壽章
水古文
黃石公
尹吉甫
王子喬
屈平書
天帝文
南山文
壺公文
長白文
斗文篆
程明道
連珠文
水壽文
壽露草
琴仲文
鄭公空
善壽印
九天文
浮丘文
長吉文
三錦齋
方叔文
西番文
鐵券文
天也忝
圓始文
餘度文
鳴星文
奇字文
梅福文
羲同篆
芝兆文
穗書文
赤松子
綵帶文
羨門文
霞壽章
凌霄文
商鼎文
同苑文
許慎文
天帝文
上古文
星斗文
錦壽文
癸劍文
瑤章文
先始文
天篆文
混冲圖
殳文書
斗文壽
古魯章
上方書
方符文
古篆文
柳莫文
純祖文
兄極文
漢武文
五華符
南極壽
魁斗文
羅胡初
西楚文
雲文軟
合桓文
碧落文
廣成子
華科神
白樂天
安期東
瀛洲文
鵲命章
龍篆文
偓佺文
蝌蚪文
淫天章
屋平書
金間系
如大壽
古鼎文
陽鼎文
六書界
沐公文
吏籀文
米元章
三合壽
上帝章
狄斗文
中谷文
萬年藤
彭祖文
茅君文
方平章
流平書
壽陽松
鍊後娘
可命文

Section 7

THE BISCUIT POEM OF LIU PO WEN

(Consultant Adviser to the First Emperor of the Ming Dynasty)

The strange title of this section is explained in the first few lines of the account as given below. Liu Po Wen, the Chinese Nostradamus, was an adviser to the first Ming Emperor, Chu Yuan-chang. Liu Po Wen was also known as Liu Chi, and it is this name which is used in the actual text of the prophecy. Liu Chi is reputed to have met a sticky end, despite the pledges of the Emperor given in the poem. Fearful of Liu's knowledge and power, the Emperor had him executed.

The prophecy is reputed to date from *c.* 1370 CE and to foretell in a cryptic manner the fortunes of the ruling houses of Ming and Ch'ing. Apart from its inclusion in the Almanac (which appears to be of relatively recent date) the prophecy is also available with various commentaries and interpretations in small booklet form in a couple of Chinese editions. It seems to have the sort of fascination that, say, the Book of Daniel or Revelation has for Christians. As with the Book of Daniel, it is possible to see that while purporting to be written in a former time, it is in fact of quite recent date. In the case of Daniel, this was supposedly written *c.* 550 BCE in Babylon. It tells with remarkable accuracy the fate of various empires until about 160 BCE. From then on it becomes very vague. It is likely that Daniel was in fact written *c.* 160 BCE as propaganda against the invading Greeks. It uses history to show that all empires will fall before God. Similarly, the prophecy of Liu Pei Wen claims to date from 1370 CE and is remarkably accurate until the fall of the Ch'ing dynasty in 1911. From then on it gets very vague and ill-defined. It seems likely that the prophecy arose from the chaos of the early Republic, the rise of Communism and the Japanese invasion as an attempt to answer fears and to show that all would eventually be well. It is interesting that in one of the books of commentary the last line of the commentary on the last section of the prophecy concerns the calendar. It says that one of the signs of change will be when the lunar calendar is done away with and the Western one is introduced. The calendar was changed thus under the first years of the Republic. Furthermore, the Court, including the traditional office charged with constructing the lunar calendar, was cleared out of the Forbidden City in 1924. Perhaps this gives us a point at which the prophecy arose.

The prophecy is very difficult to understand as it relies upon puns and games using various characters to make up a totally new character which then reveals a name. In the translation we have given the true meaning where this was discoverable. In square brackets we have then given historical explanations and, where appropriate, we have also explained how the text reads in the original and what methods are used to arrive at its true reading. Thus anyone trying to read the Chinese text will need to bear this in mind. For non-Chinese readers, we thought it important to give the prophecy followed by an explanation rather than an exact translation of the Chinese text.

The great founding Emperor of the Ming dynasty was eating a biscuit in his palace one day. Just as he took the first bite, a servant came to say that Consultant Liu Chi wished to speak to the Emperor. The Emperor covered the bowl and sent for Liu Chi.

The Emperor asked Chi: 'Sir, you are good at predictions, calculating and so forth. Do you know what is covered with this bowl?'

Chi calculated on his fingers and said, 'It looks like the sun, or like the moon, and one piece has been bitten by a golden dragon [the Emperor].' The Emperor removed the bowl and revealed the biscuit.

[The dialogue continues thus:]

EMPEROR: 'Tell me, what will be the future of my country?'

CHI: 'Boundless is your rule. Myriad are your sons and grandsons. Why do you ask me about the future?'

EMPEROR: 'From ancient times it is said that the destiny of a land is fixed either for good or bad. Is it true that one man under Heaven [the Emperor of China] can bring good or bad luck to the country?'

CHI: 'Our Ming dynasty is very prosperous and controls the earth. But there will be wars in the south. The north side will be all right because the north side has your eldest son the Prince. He has a good-fortune star Wen Sing. [This refers to the capture of Peking early in the Ming dynasty.] The west side is strongly defended.'

EMPEROR: 'So this is good.'

CHI: 'In my opinion, although your castle is strong and sturdy a swallow can easily fly over it.' (Chi is referring to the Emperor's fourth son, Yen Wang.) Chi then wrote three songs of prophecy.

'When Yen Wang comes to be the Emperor, there will be

peace. [This refers to Yung Lo who was the first Emperor's fourth son and rebelled against the first Emperor's grandson. Yung Lo waged a fierce civil war until his victory in 1403 when he captured Nanking. He is also referred to in the text by his Title of Reign, Yung Le.] When the old, bald person comes to advise (Minister Yao Kuang) all will be well. Because there is no war, nearly half the heroes (members of the Kan Chung Society) will disperse. On the north side many Mongols will attack, killing many people. Therefore the Emperor should attack by himself and gain peace. [Yung Lo himself led a number of successful attacks on the Mongols and associated tribes.] The senior officers will admire the Emperor's skill – but if once he slips, they will rebel. [In 1449 the Mongols attacked again, seizing the Emperor. A new Emperor was found and he repulsed the invaders.] So defend the Empire and the Mongols will not attack. (The north side will be strongly and bravely defended by you.) Tomorrow strengthen your borders.' [A major rebuilding of the Great Wall took place in the mid-Ming period.]

EMPEROR: *'How is China now?'*

CHI: *'This is a very bad time.'*

EMPEROR: *'How and why is it so bad?'*

CHI: *'Lots of people are hungry. Yet the Emperors [Tai Tsung, Ying Tsung, Wu Tsung and Shih Tsung are meant in particular –* c. *1449–1566] live in luxury, are well fed and live long. At that time there will be a Prime Minister called Wei. He will cause trouble, death and conflict amongst the good officials. He will run pirate ships.' [This refers to Wei Chung-hsien (1568–1627). A eunuch, he rose to terrible power. In the text he is named obliquely. The text reads '8000 women ghosts trouble the Palace'. The characters for '8000 women ghosts' are 八千女鬼. Combined together they make the character 魏. This is Wei.]*

EMPEROR: *'Will father and son fight over the country?'*

CHI: *'No. The last of your name will hang himself from a tree. [This is referred to cryptically in the text thus: 'The T square hangs on the tree.' The character for 'tree' is 木. Put a T square hanging from it and you have 朱. This is the character Chu, which is the family name of the Ming Emperors.] The country will be attacked by a person called Shun. Then your country will be nearly finished.'*

EMPEROR: *'What do you mean by nearly finished?'*

CHI: *'When myriad sons and myriad grandsons go, that will be the end (meaning the son of Emperor Wan Li and the grandson, Ch'ung Cheng, the last Emperor). The Manchu will take over. Li Tzu-ch'eng will also attack. [This is referred to cryptically thus: 'Eighteen sons will attack.' The characters for 'eighteen sons' are 十八子. Combine these and they form the character 李, Li. Li led a major revolt in the provinces* *of Shensi, Hupei and Honan at the end of the Ming dynasty, from 1630 to 1644. In 1644 he captured Peking, effectively ending the Ming dynasty. This laid the way open for the Manchu to invade and set up the Ch’ing dynasty. The rest of Li Tzu-ch’eng’s name is also found by puns, e.g., ‘The eye with a line above.’ The characters for ‘eye’ and ‘line’ are and 目 丿 respectively. Combined they make 自, Tzu.] The eldest son of the Emperor will attack the country. People would rather study than fight. The year of Mao Tzu and Chi Ch’ou will be very bad. Every house will be deserted. Many will go hungry. A warlord will control the city (Wu San-kuei).’ [This refers to the Ming general Wu San-kuei. The last Emperor called him to assist Peking. Before he arrived, Li had taken Peking. Wu surrendered to the Manchu and together they drove Li from Peking.]*

EMPEROR: *‘Hunger is not important. That is normal.’*

CHI: *‘The western side will attack. There are no honest advisers. Your countrymen will see the country go downhill day by day. There will be no luck in the country and the cunning people will be scheming all the time. The general will flee and cross the Yellow River seeking refuge.’*

EMPEROR: *‘Will there be trouble on Coal Hill, because extra soldiers can be sent if necessary?’ [This refers to the Forbidden City.]*

CHI: *‘No, there will now be peace. [The Ch’ing dynasty will be founded.] There is a lucky star which blesses the country for half of six hundred years.’ [The Ch’ing dynasty lasted nearly three hundred years, from 1644 to 1911.]*

EMPEROR: *‘So they rule for half of six hundred years. This is good. I don’t want any more. Why don’t you write down your ideas and put them into a sealed envelope for us to open in times of trouble? If you are too embarrassed to say something, write it down and I’ll put it in my treasury for my son or grandson to open if necessary.’*

CHI: *‘I had just the same idea!’*

Chi made up a song for the Emperor which said: ‘During this period there will be war with Japan and trouble with eunuchs. The Mongols will rule for 280 years. Wu San-kuei and his followers have been surrounded. [Wu rebelled against the Ch’ing dynasty in 1673 and was followed by two other provincial rulers in a war known as the Revolt of the Three Feudatories. They were not defeated until 1681.] There will be twenty-three people to protect the eight directions.’ [The figure 23 means the Three Feudatories.]

EMPEROR: *‘Will the twenty-three be honest and will the people fare well?’*

CHI: *‘I will tell you honestly. If the twenty-three are* *dishonest, then your Ming dynasty is finally over.' [The revolt sought to re-establish the Ming dynasty but eventually crumbled through mistrust.]*

The Emperor was very surprised. 'Who is in charge of China?' he asked.

CHI: *[This entire section consists of the characters for 2 and 8 followed by one other character. Whilst the cryptic code of some of it is clear, at other points it is not.] 'The Ch'ing will last 280 years. There will be 2–8 major wars.' [They include, according to the commentary, the White Lotus (1796–1804, Buddhist Triad Society); the T'ai-ping (1850–65); Moslems (1855–70); Kashgar (seized in 1758–59); England (the Opium Wars of 1840 and 1859); England and France (1860); Russia (at various times); Japan (1894–95).]*

EMPEROR: *'The Mongols – will they really last over two hundred years?'*

CHI: *'The Ch'ing dynasty will be in charge. [The text reads: 'The rain water grass head.' The characters are* 雨水草頭 *. They make Mau,* 滿 *, the family name of the Ch'ing.] They will come to China in the eighteenth year of Shun Chih. [This was the first Ch'ing Emperor, who had ruled the Mongols from 1627. In 1644 he was thus entering his eighteenth year.] In the 18th year of Shun Chih fire and water will fight each other. The next Emperor (K'ang Hsi) will rule (for sixty-one years). [K'ang Hsi, 1662–1723.] So use the men of your own province as they are more loyal.'*

EMPEROR: *'You use the men as water to kill the fire. Will the son-in-law attack?' [K'ang Hsi's eldest son often tried plotting against him.]*

CHI: *'No. Because water and fire will compromise, there will be peace in the country. But some people will be dishonest and cunning and cause trouble. Also many people will go hungry. Under Yung Cheng [1723–36] and Ch'ien Lung [1736–96] things will get better.'*

EMPEROR: *'Will Mongolia cease to be?'*

CHI: *'Not yet, although people will have a hard time. But the luck of the country is going well. All the people will be of one heart and working towards the same goal. (This is during Chia Ch'ing [1796–1821].) After this time many will die. Monks and nuns will become revolutionaries. The British will invade with cannons. [Text says: 'The fire dragon will cross the river and make it too hot to bear.' This refers to the British bombardment of forts in 1840.] (This period is called Tao Kuang [1821–51].) There will be many disasters. Hung will attack. [Hung Hsiu-ch'uan led the T'ai-ping rebellion. His name is found by yet another cryptic use of characters.] It will be especially bad in the years of the Ram, Monkey, Pig and*

Dog. Sorrow will abound. The moon's light will be dimmed during the next period (called Hsien Feng). [This refers to the crushing of the vast T'ai-ping rebellion of 1850–65. The rebels called themselves Ming, which means 'bright'. The character is constructed from the characters for moon and day. Hence the pun and cryptic reference. Hsein Feng ruled from 1851 to 1862.] In the next period (T'ung Chih [1862–75]) people will go hungry and there will be many disturbances. But the country will be built up again. [Following the defeat of the T'ai-ping, the country was more settled although revolts occurred in many places.] But beware. For a woman carrying a baby will be in charge.' (Kuang Hsu [1875–1908].) [During this time the country was ruled by the Empress Dowager Tz'u-hsi whose son Kuang Hsu was only four years old when he came to the throne. Tz'u-hsi dominated the last decades of the Ch'ing.]

EMPEROR: 'And will Mongolia still exist or not?'

CHI: 'Things will get better. The people will be happy with the Emperor.

'In the end it is the White Flag which will kill the Mongols. [The text says '99 catties'. The character for 100 is 百 . Take away 1 and the character becomes 白, 'white'. The White Flag was the Ming flag, but refers here to the overthrow of the Ch'ing by the Revolution of 1911.] The capital will move. [Because of feuding warlords, Nanking was for a time the Republic's capital.] It is a troubled time. Moslems, Han, Tibetans, etc., are at war. There is a big hole between the mountains and it holds 108,000. If anyone gets there, they will be all right. If not, then hard luck. [A possible reference to Hong Kong.] A big general [this is supposed to be Hsuan T'ung, also known as Pu Yi, or one of his restorationist generals] on a horse will come and kill the bad men and protect the honest. The people will enjoy peace.'

EMPEROR: 'Will Mongolia still be there?'

CHI: 'Mongolia will have been defeated long ago. Everything will be well and music will play. There will be an Emperor for five hundred years and a holy man will come to sort out all the problems. All will be peaceful. Everyone will have enough money. The Mongolians in the north will still have a difficult time because they were defeated by the eight groups' army. Everyone will be free to enjoy themselves. The luck of the country will go well. All things will be plentiful. At this time there will be a lot of learning. It will be like a monkey splashing, a chicken on a perch or a dog barking [instances of exuberance]. The country will have excellent poets and generals. If a war comes, it will make the people flee a thousand miles. So the subjects should be loved as though brothers. Train for posterity and for whatever comes.'

Section 8

THE YELLOW EMPEROR'S POEM OF THE FOUR SEASONS

This set of figures represents one of the most simple and general forecasts in the Almanac. It is not to be taken too seriously. To work it, you need to know what 'hour' you were born in – that is to say, which of the Twelve Earthly Branches is yours. Then you find the picture for the season in which you were born. Reading from top to bottom the pictures represent spring, summer, autumn and winter. Let us say your 'hour' character is Tzu (子), and you were born in the winter. This means looking at the fourth picture. Here, Tzu (子) is shown in the small circle on the Emperor's belly. You then look up in the columns on the left the general forecast for those born on the Emperor's belly.

The figure represented in the pictures is that of Huang-ti – the Yellow Emperor (*c.* 2650 BCE), first of the Five August Emperors. He is credited in legend with enormous powers of control. Ssu-ma Ch'ien, the historian, speaks of his causing 'beings in movement and in repose, divine beings, great and small, everything on which the sun and moon shine, to become calm and docile.' What better person to use!

The poem reads down each column, starting on the right:

Born on the Emperor's head,
No troubles in life at all.
Even the poor will get rich,
Enough clothes and food.

He always gets senior post,
An excellent mind for planning.
Women will be very steady and good,
Marrying into high class (educated husband).

Born on the Emperor's hand,
Money enough for a business.
Gentlemen help him, even when travelling,
Home gives him every comfort.

When he first starts something it is so-so,
But later very successful.
Money will come from all directions.
When old, all is success.

軒轅黃帝四季詩曰

生在黃帝頭
處世多高位
一世永無憂
君子好籌謀
小人多富貴
女人平穩好
衣食自然週
嫁得俊儒流

生在黃帝手
初年平平穩
營謀本錢夠
積聚十分有
出外貴人逢
財帛四方來
家中百事有
老大則到手

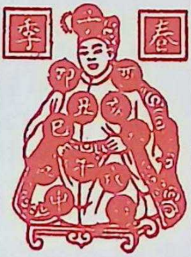
生在黃帝肩
衣祿隨時好
一生富萬千
晚景有庄田
中年財帛有
兄弟多得力
兒孫衣綫綿
前苦後頭甜

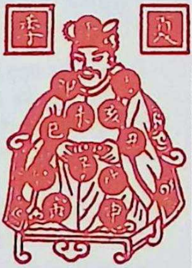
生在黃帝腹
中年衣食貴
衣食自然足
晚年多享福
文武兩邊隨
快活盡榮華
笙歌連舞曲
添壽更加福

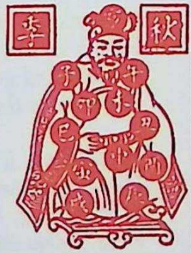
黃帝股下跟
門風多改換
父母當奇珍
此是貴人身
中年衣食好
子孫必新耀
老大得黃金
文明多進步

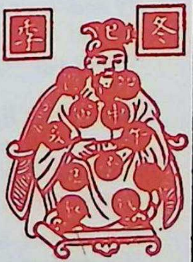
生在黃帝膝
日日路上行
作事無利益
未免脚拂拂
初年勞碌多
晚景享榮華
也不缺衣食
中年辛苦極

生在黃帝足
女人嫁兩夫
修行免勞碌
男人妻兩績
一世也平安
踏破荒山嶺
不宜居祖屋
離祖方成福









Born on the Emperor's shoulder,
Throughout life is wealthy.
In middle age, what riches!
Lots of sons and grandsons.

Well dressed at all times,
Old age brings properties and farms.
All his brothers come to help.
In old age he has every comfort.

Born on the Emperor's belly,
He is well dressed and fed.
Personal assistants, bodyguards at all times,
For ever holding parties and dancing.

In middle age, more variable fortune,
In old age he enjoys a comfortable time.
Longevity makes him happy and glorious
And brings him yet more good fortune.

Born on the Emperor's girth,
He has such loving parents.
In middle age, well dressed and fed,
In old age he has gold.

He moves, is promoted many times,
For he is a nobleman.
His son and grandson very modern,
Thriving in the progressive world.

Born on the Emperor's knee,
He receives no reward for his labours.
When young, such difficult jobs.
Few clothes he has but at least he has some.

Day after day, no time to rest,
By middle age, worn and tired.
But old age brings wealth;
Middle age brings terrible bad luck.

Born on the Emperor's foot,
Things come easily to him,
Avoiding difficulties, preserving himself from dangers.
It is not suitable for him to live in his ancestor's house.

If a woman, then two husbands.
If a man, married twice.
If he lives far from his ancestor's house,
He will be more comfortable in his old age.

Section 9

TIME OF SUNRISE AND SUNSET OF THE TWENTY-FOUR JOINTS AND BREATHS OF THE YEAR

For details of the Twenty-Four Joints and Breaths, see the Introduction, p. 30, and Section 5. The list included in this section of the Almanac provides a further aid to farmers by giving sunrise and sunset times according to readings based on Kwangtung (Canton).

CHARMS

(Sections 10, 17 and 44)

The use of charms has been a long-established part of Chinese religion. The Almanac itself is a charm. By hanging it from a doorpost or bed, evil is warded off. Hence the red (lucky colour) loop of string at the top of each copy. It is also used in other ways. For instance, a pregnant woman who is suffering badly may have a copy placed on her stomach. In certain cases, a copy will be put under the pillow of a sick person. The colours, characters and illustrations used for the Almanac's cover are all bound up with its properties as a charm against evil and misfortune.

Within the book itself there are three sections containing charms. Their functions vary enormously although their method of use remains virtually the same.

The charm itself cannot be used by just anyone. It is customary to seek the help of a fortune-teller, a diviner, a Taoist or Buddhist priest or an astrologer. In many cases the person involved will fulfil several of the above functions. The room or building will have been prepared by the burning of incense. The practitioner will then select the most appropriate and powerful charm. These are either charms associated with Chang Tao-ling (see below) or linked to one of the gods. The charm is written on yellow paper using red ink. This must be done with due reverence in order to invoke the power of the particular deity.

The charms begin in several formal ways. Those in the Chang Tao-ling section begin with Chen (鎮), meaning 'to repress' or 'to reduce to submission'. It is imposing order on the chaotic. In the later sections some of the talismans begin with Ch'ih (敕), 'to order' or 'to command'. In Section 44 all the charms to protect against illness according to the month begin in this way. The term Ch'ih is one of the earliest ones used in charms. Combined with Kwei – ghost or demon – it appears in the literature of the Han period (207 BCE–9 CE).

Certain charms begin with Cheng (正). The word Cheng means 'first' and is used in Taoist literature to describe the Tao – the first principle of universal order. This gives a hint at the functional concept underlying the use of charms. In their most potent form they combat the forces of disruption and chaos which threaten order.

It is also worth noting that charms are deemed more powerful if they also have a representation of lightning (or if possible two representations). This is usually done by elongating the final stroke or strokes of the principal charm character into a twisting line denoting lightning. There are two concepts linked with this usage. First, the primeval chaos as described in the traditional creation story is disrupted by a bolt of lightning erupting into the midst of the dark mists. The effect of this bolt is to shatter the darkness. From this Heaven and Earth emerge; from them the creative forces of yin and yang arise. So, at the beginning of time, chaos is transformed into order by lightning. (A similar function of creative power over chaos appears in the complex story of the killing of Emperor Hun-tun, whose name means 'chaos', by the emperors Shu and Hu. Shu-hu means 'lightning', and at the death of Hun-tun the world emerged.)[1]

Secondly, the Thunder God is a major figure of order and correction. With his lightning he strikes down wrongdoers, especially those who threaten the divine order. In Buddhist mythology, lightning is pictured as shattering false teachings and beliefs. Again, the emphasis is on re-establishing order.

The charms often end using language reminiscent of former Imperial Edicts. Formulas such as 'Let the Law be obeyed; let this order be respected and executed straightaway' are used.

Once the charm has been written out, it is usually burned. The ashes are mixed with water and either sprinkled or drunk. Certain charms are pasted up to prevent the entry of evil spirits or other intruders such as birds or mice. The charms contained in the Almanac are there to be copied. They are not seen as being efficacious in their printed form. It is only when they are correctly and reverently written out in appropriately coloured ink that they become effective.

Whilst charms and talismans are used by Buddhist monks and nuns, it is the Taoist influence that lies most forcefully and systematically behind charms and their power. Taoism traces the use of charms and talismans back to the earliest figures of civilization. In the strange collection of apocryphal Taoist writings called *Ku Wei Shu* (*Old Mystery Books*, *c.* 100 CE), the role of charms and talismans is mentioned in connection with the last two of the legendary Five Emperors – Yao and Shun – and the mysterious Emperor who founded the Hsia dynasty, Yu the Great. Of Yu the Great, the story goes that there was a great and terrible river flood which devastated most of China. Yu was assigned the duty of fighting the flood and for ten years, sparing neither himself nor his men, he struggled to contain the river. In the end, he was helped by the gift of a talisman chart. Painted with red characters on green material, it showed how the river should flow. Whoever controlled this talisman – called the Ho-t'u – controlled the stars, rivers and the Five Elements. This talisman, having achieved its purpose under the rule of Yu, was then buried on Mao Shan.[2]

One of the central documents of religious (rather than philosophical) Taoism is the Ling-pao Five Talismans. These great charms (one of which was the talisman given to Yu) control all creation and in some texts are credited with the act of creation itself. Like so many of the most powerful charms in Taoism, they can only be used with great caution. But the idea expressed in this description of their original formation captures the sense of order and authority which lies at the heart of the use of charms:

> The heavenly writings, jade characters,
> Flew off and disappeared into the primordial breath
> Of the mysterious void,
> Where they congealed and became Ling-wen,
> 'Writings which bear spirit and life'.
> Joined to the eight trigrams, they became harmonious tones.
> Joined to the five talismans, they become chang charms.[3]

There are numerous books within Taoism concerned with the construction and use of charms, such as the *Ch'i-men Tun-chia*, which contains talismans and charms for the Nine Stars and the Twenty-Eight Constellations. But the key figure in all Taoist works and practice of charms is Chang Tao-ling.

Chang Tao-ling was born in 35 CE and is traditionally believed to have ascended to Heaven to become an Immortal in 157 CE. Legend says that by the age of seven he understood the *Tao Te Ching* (the great Taoist classic reputed to be written by the sage Lao Tzu, in the sixteenth century BCE), alchemy, feng-shui and astronomy. He established a school of practical or 'religious' Taoism in Kiangsi province. His organization of Taoism into something resembling a formal religion entitles him to be called the founder of religious Taoism. He is often known as Chang Tien-shih – Heavenly Master Chang – a title still used by his descendants.

When Chang ascended to Heaven he left behind his seal, his sword, a mystic book and a collection of charms. It is these which form the basis of Taoist charm and talisman study. There is a selection of these charms in the Almanac (see below). It is known that one of Chang Tao-ling's most favoured methods of healing (healing was the core of his school at Kiangsi) was to make the patient write out all the sins and failures of his life, and then wade out into a river, clutching the written confession, and thus cleanse himself of his sins. In this action the roots of written charms as well as the use of water can be traced. Charms derived from Chang Tao-ling are deemed the most efficacious.

Finally, it is worth noting the basis upon which modern Buddhist monks teach students the use of charms. The attacks by Western missionaries, scientists and sociologists plus the reforms forced upon Buddhism by the Communist system within China have led to great caution regarding charms. Stung by charges of superstition and fraud, the modern Buddhist-trained diviner or astrologer who uses charms does so as an integral part of Buddhism. As explained earlier, charms are meant to restore order. It is very much this ordering and controlling function that is stressed today, occasionally even to the extent of regarding charms as being psychologically helpful if nothing else.

Section 10

CHANG T'IEN-SHIH, CATCHER OF GHOSTS, AND HIS CHARMS

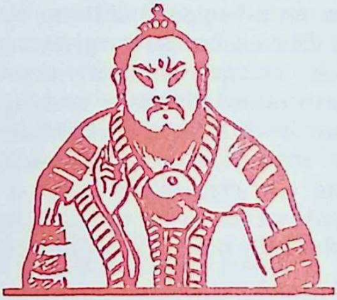
The charm immediately below the portrait of Chang T'ien-shih (see p. 84) is put on the wall to protect the home. The bottom right-hand charm is inscribed: 'Place on a well to ensure clean/lucky water.' The third charm, on the bottom left, is inscribed: 'Hundred Different Things Charm', meaning it covers everything.

INCANTATION

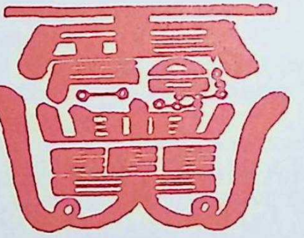
The person faces east and recites the following incantation, clenches his teeth three times, holding the water in his mouth, then spits it out.

'The universe and yin–yang are wide, the sun comes out from the east. I use this charm to get rid of all the evils. My mouth spits out strong fire, my eyes can shine out rays like the sun. I can ask the Heavenly Soldiers to catch the devils and get all sickness out of the house. Heavenly Soldiers can suppress evils and create luck. Let the Law be obeyed; let this order be executed straightaway.'

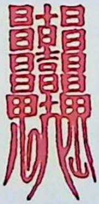
張天師符



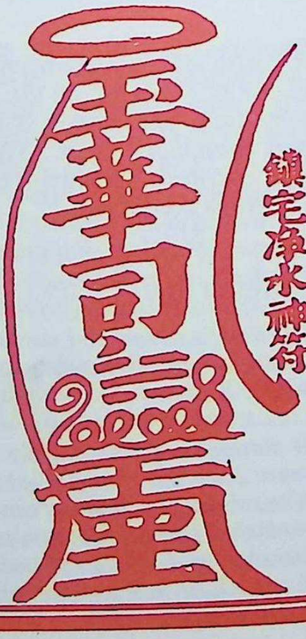
書符法〇叩齒三通含淨水一口向東噴之〇咒曰赫赫陰陽日出東方勅書此符盡掃不祥口吐三昧之火眼放如日之光捉怪使天蓬力士破疾用鎮煞金剛降伏妖怪化吉爲祥急急如律令勅



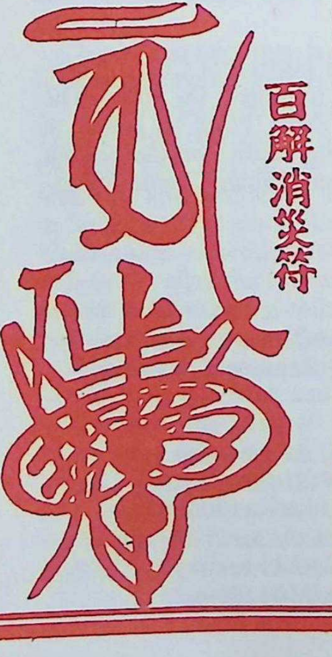
鎮衣冠鞋履怪符



硃書此符佩帶大吉



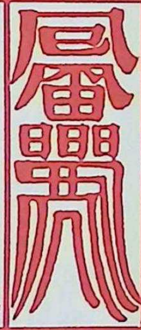
鎮宅净水神符



百解消災符

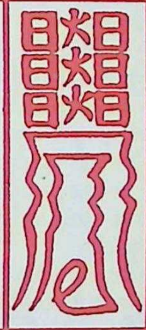
張天師鎮諸煞神符

鎮床帳枕被等怪符



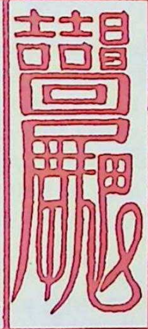
硃書此符佩帶大吉

鎮灶釜甑等怪神符



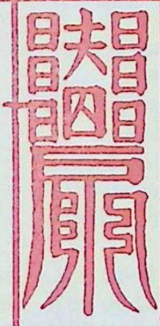
硃書此符貼厨房吉

鎮牛馬犬畜等怪符



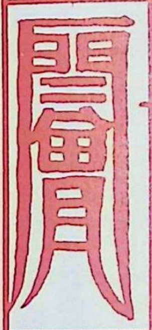
硃書此符貼怪處吉

鎮禽鳥入人家等符



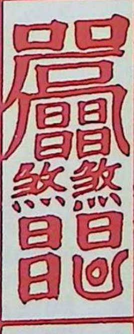
硃書此符貼大門吉

鎮鳥獸汚衣冠等符



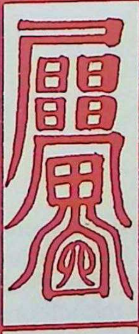
硃書此符佩帶大吉

鎮器皿物具等怪符



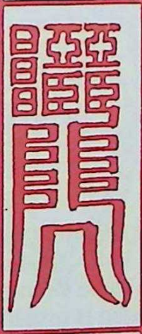
硃書此符壓怪處吉

鎮舟車等速怪靈符



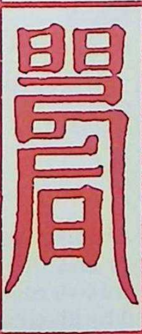
硃書此符壓怪處吉

鎮野獸入人家等符



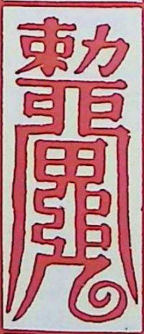
硃書此符貼門上吉

鎮鷄鵝鳥等怪之符



此符壓栖井窩上吉

鎮諸般總怪之靈符



此符與見怪人佩吉

[Whenever you make use of any of the ten charms shown on p. 85, you should also put charms 1 and 3 up in your house at the same time.]

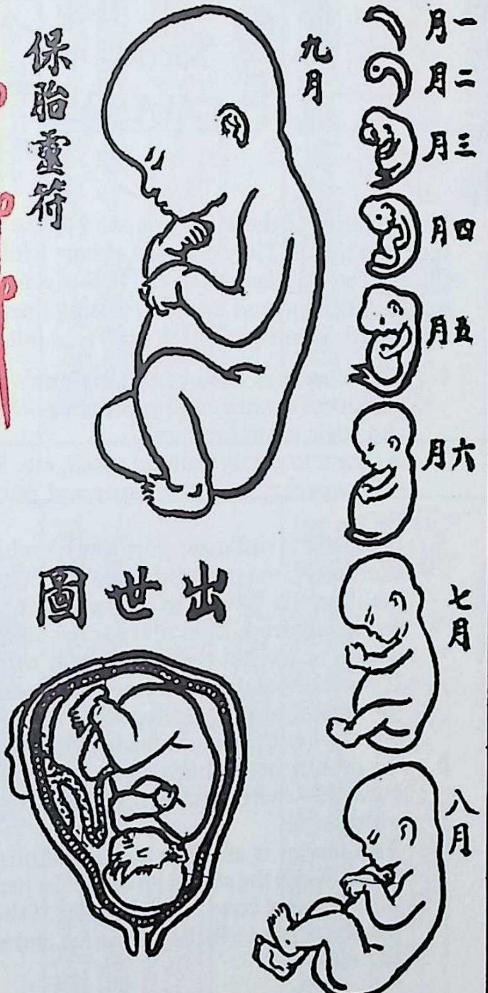
1. *To be carried whenever you move your bed – to protect bedding*
2. *To be hung on the kitchen wall when you are installing a new stove – to protect kitchen implements*
3. *To be put on the wall of animal enclosures to avoid sickness*
4. *To be hung on the main entrance door to prevent the entry of birds and other flying creatures*
5. *To be carried on the person to prevent birds and animals coming near and soiling your clothes*
6. *To be put up around the house if objects keep getting lost*
7. *To be put inside a car or boat to avoid accidental loss*
8. *To be hung on the main door to prevent the entry of wild animals*
9. *To be put up at places where clothes are drying and at wells to prevent their being soiled by birds*
10. *To be carried on the person to give added power in avoiding all the above misfortunes – protecting the person from disturbed people*

Section 17

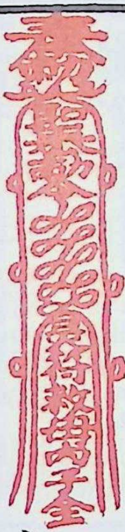
CHARMS TO PROTECT THE FOETUS AND SPIRITS GUARDING THE STAGES OF PREGNANCY AND CHILDHOOD

To protect the mother and child the Almanac carries basic but powerful charms for both pregnancy and the early months following birth. With these charms are two contrasting parts. First, simple information is provided by illustrations showing the foetus's development month by month, plus a full-page illustration of how the foetus is fed by the umbilical cord (not shown here). For many women this advice, simple as it is, is the only information of its kind they will receive about what is happening during pregnancy.

受胎之圖式

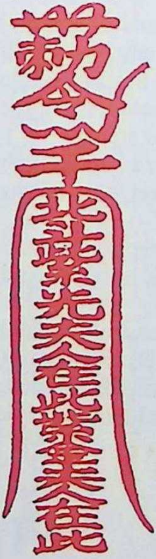

一月
二月
三月
四月
五月
六月
七月
八月
九月
出世圖

保胎霊符



此符內是人物等照樣各字宜謄寫明如孕婦有犯胎神者時符化火調水服之即愈

六甲大犯五方霊符



The second part consists of two lists. The first gives the deities who guard the child on each day for the first twelve months of its birth. The second list gives the Twenty-Six Malignant Gates, which are shown in more graphic details in Section 13.

Section 44

CHARMS

The majority of these charms are written on yellow paper or very thin tissue. They only last a short while, whereas those of Chang Tao-ling last all year. Below are descriptions of the main application and method of using these charms. They are numbered from right to left, top and bottom.

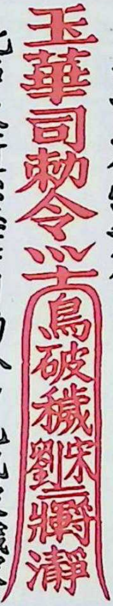
1. This charm is used to protect one's house, so that evil influences cannot enter or attack it. Write it on red paper and stick it onto the wall.
2. A charm to purify water in a well, etc. Write it on tissue or yellow paper, burn the paper and put the ashes into the water.
3. If anyone is suffering from a fever which makes him feel alternately hot and cold, copy this charm onto paper. If the illness is severe, burn the paper, put the ashes into water and drink it; in other cases, carry the charm in the pocket or hang it round the neck with red string.
4. If you feel that there is a strange influence or a bad spirit in the house, affix this charm to the affected part of the house: it will drive the bad spirit away.
5. To protect her unborn child, a pregnant woman should burn this charm and drink the ashes in a bowl of cold water.
6. This charm is effective for eye ailments and abdominal pains. Write the charm on a piece of paper, burn it and put the ashes in a bowl of cold water. If the eyes are affected, use the water to bathe them; for abdominal pains, drink the water.

鎮宅驅犯宜奉祀

北斗紫光夫人座鎮

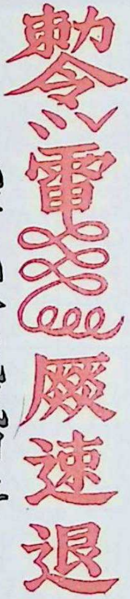
用紅紙書銜祀奉其畚神則不犯之

净水靈符


玉華司勅令
烏破穢宋
劉二將軍
淨

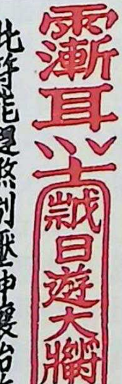
此净水符係玉華司勅令⺌九鳳破穢宋劉二将軍清净水照欵書用火化下應驗

治發冷靈符



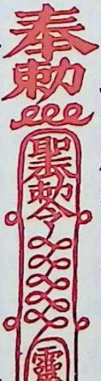
此符或食或佩即好

鎮煞靈符


雷斬耳
歲日遊大將軍押煞罡

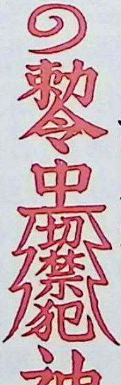
此符能趕煞制壓神禳胎效驗甚速若有觸犯胎神将符照寫粘於動作之處即安

安胎靈符

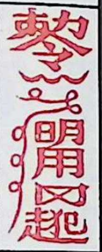
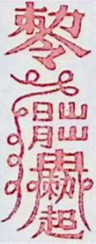
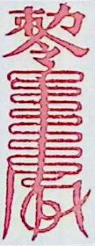
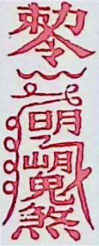
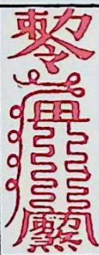
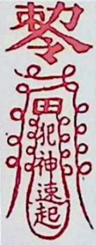
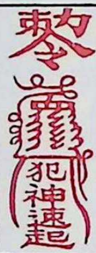
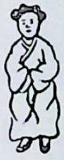
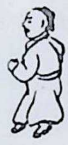
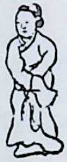
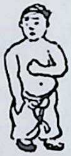
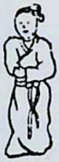
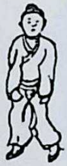
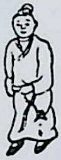

奉勅
聖勅令
靈符救母内子全

此符内聖人勅令等照樣各字宜謄寫明如孕婦有犯胎神者将符化火調水服之即愈

眼熱肚痛靈符



此符用清水化　眼熱洗　肚痛食

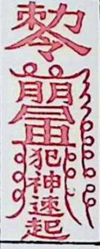
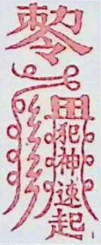
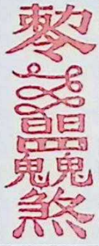
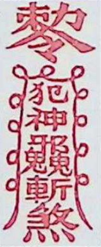
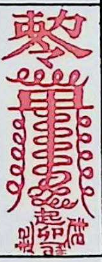
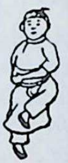
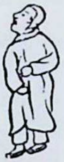
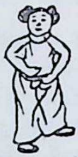
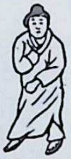
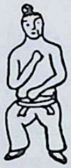
正月生人犯符	二月生人犯符	三月生人犯符	四月生人犯符	五月生人犯符	六月生人犯符	七月生人犯符
						
						
正月生人犯子丑寅申方位有木石磚瓦動土板竹門灶主病眼痛肚痛左脚痛寒熱嘔吐當天禮儀請符起吉係三四十一月修造	二月生人犯子寅卯辰未酉戌方有木石板竹鍈刀主病眼痛右手痛腰骨痛脚痛撞着飛天五鬼請符起吉係四五七八十一月修造	三月生人犯子寅午申酉方有木門鷄栖牛欄修坟拆卸房床主病左眼左手肚痛右脚四肢寒冷請符起吉係正六七十一月修造	四月生人犯子丑辰午未酉亥方有术倉牛欄門石灶壁主病心痛口痛左脚痛眼痛腰痛四肢不安請符起吉係七十二月修造	五月生人犯子丑辰午未酉戌方有社門木神主病右眼左脚痛肚痛腰痛冷熱往来用賓燭水飯請符起吉係正七八月修造	六月生人犯寅卯申戌亥方有大門香火祖先不安主病右眼心口腰脚痛四肢不安夜睡不寧用果酒請符起吉係三四九月修造	七月生人犯辰午未申方有板竹壁香火神枱土神主病右眼後心痛肚痛頭痛飲食不安時行急症請符起吉係三六九月修造

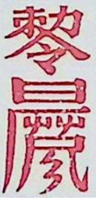
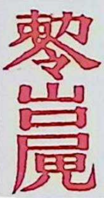
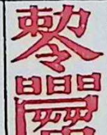
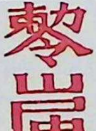
The next set of charms is used by those who, after starting a building or repair job, find themselves becoming ill. They should look up the month of their birth, and if they find that they have offended by working at an unpropitious time, they should affix the relevant charm to the work and finish it in the month recommended. The charms for the first three months, starting from the right, read as follows:

A person born in the first month will offend if he does anything to do with wood or stone, bricks, a ceiling, a door or a stove during the Tzu, Ch'ou, Yin or Shen days. He may suffer from eye or abdominal troubles, a painful left leg, fever and shivering or vomiting. The work should be completed in the third, fourth or eleventh month.

A person born in the second month will offend if he does anything to do with wood, stone, a board or knives, during Tzu, Yin, Mao, Ch'en, Wei, Yu or Hsu days. He may suffer from eye troubles, an ailing right hand, a painful back or legs or a bump on the head. The work should be completed in the fourth, fifth, seventh, eighth or eleventh month.

A person born in the third month will offend if he does anything to do with a wooden door, a chicken coop, a byre, breaking down a room partition or a bed during Tzu, Yin, Wu, Shen or Yu days. He may suffer from problems with the left eye, left hand, abdomen, right leg or coldness in the limbs. The work should be completed in the first, sixth, seventh or eleventh month.

八月生人犯符	九月生人犯符	十月生人犯符	十一月生人犯符	十二月生人犯符
				
				
八月生人犯丑卯午未酉亥方位有石頭壁邊雞籠房床廚灶不安主病頭痛右眼痛口痛心痛左脚痛請符起吉係四五月修造	九月生人犯寅巳未申亥方竹壁木石主右眼痛左腰痛左脚痛背痛係撞着凶星五鬼急症谷倉神請符起吉係三七月修造	十月生人犯丑辰午申戌方有木倉牛馬羊栖井神佛道香火銕釘主腰肚痛左脚痛飲食不安請符起吉係三五七月修造	十一月生人犯丑寅卯辰巳申酉戌方主眼肚痛左脚痛沉重作悶冷熱四肢不安撞着無頭死鬼請符起吉係正三四八月修造	十二月生人犯寅卯辰午未申方板木香火灶石飛来凶星飛来五鬼主右耳左眼熱左手舌痛心痛請符起吉係三六九十一月修造

李文卿	張仲卿
	
甲子日得病東北方冲着五道傷神過往傷神男女傷神家神祖先不安主病寒熱往来四肢沉重骨痛用黑錢五百紙馬水飯果酒向北方送大吉	丙寅日得病東北方冲着男女傷神新死鬼無頭鬼傷神主病骨肉疼痛身熱不安用白錢五百神馬水飯果酒齋雜金銀衣裳宝烛向北方送大吉
龐諸卿	司馬卿
	
乙丑日得病東北方冲着刀兵傷神外来男女傷神灶君土地不安主病頭痛嘔吐氣急沉重不安用白錢二百神馬水飯果酒向東北方設送大吉	丁卯日得病東方冲着樹木傷神落水傷神家神不安東方有竹木犯主病骨痛四肢沉重睡卧不安用白錢二百神馬水飯果酒宝烛向東方設送吉

The third set of charms relate to those who suddenly fall ill or become uncomfortable. They should look up the day on which the trouble began under its Earthly and Heavenly signs. The full cycle of sixty days is given in the Almanac, with a specific charm for each possible combination. Below are translations of the first four (they run from top to bottom, right to left, on the far left). (Shang Shens are evil spirits.)

If you fall ill on a Chia Tzu day, this means you are opposed by evils from the north, Wu Tao Shang Shen and Kuo Wang Shang Shen [male and female spirits]. This will make your home's ancestors restless. It will cause fever, heavy limbs and painful bones. Use this charm and some shiny new coins, with 500 pieces of paper money, rice, fruit and wine. Pray towards the north and burn all these things; throw away the coins. This will give great fortune.

If you fall ill on a Yi Ch'ou day, you are opposed by the north, a knife and soldiers, male and female Shang Shen. This will make the Stove God and the Earth King unhappy. It will cause headache, vomiting and breathing trouble. Use this charm and white (new and shiny) coins, 200 pieces of paper money, rice, fruit and wine. Pray towards the north. This will give great fortune.

If you fall ill on a Ping Yin day, you are opposed by the north, male and female Shang Shen, new ghosts and headless ghosts. This will cause bone complaints, muscle pains. Use this charm and white coins, 500 pieces of paper money, a bowl of clear water, rice, fruit, wine, a vegetarian dish, gold and silver paper and paper clothes. Light candles and pray facing north. This will give great fortune.

If you fall ill on a Ting Mao day you are opposed by the east, tree Shang Shen and Lok Shui Shang Shen. Your home buddhas will be distressed, your bamboos and trees on the east side will have a bad spirit around them. This will cause bone complaints, heavy limbs and disturbed sleep. Use this charm and white coins, 200 pieces of paper money, a bowl of water, rice and fruit. Light candles and pray towards the east. This will give great fortune.

Section 11

THE TWENTY-EIGHT CONSTELLATIONS AND FORTUNES

We have already dealt in some detail with the Twenty-Eight Constellations in the Introduction (see pp. 36–7). Below we give a translation of part of this section. Each constellation has first the creature name, then the name of the soldier hero associated with it. Then come details of whether it is a good or bad influence. Below this is a more detailed explanation – we have provided two complete examples. (The soldiers' names are in phoneticized Cantonese pronunciation.)

1.	*Crocodile*	*Tang Kin*	*Good fortune*

Everything you do goes well. If you study, you will gain success and honour. You will marry well and have faithful sons. Beware of having anything to do with the dead. This will cause disaster and two more people will die.

2.	*Dragon*	*Ng Hon*	*Bad fortune*

If you marry or bury someone, within ten days you will have a terrible disaster. This disaster will harm your children. Your daughter-in-law will be a widow.

3.	*Badger*	*Kar Fok*	*Bad fortune*
4.	*Fox*	*Kwaing Hop*	*Good fortune*
5.	*Dog*	*Kan Sun*	*Bad fortune*
6.	*Wolf*	*Sunm Rang*	*Good fortune*
7.	*Hare*	*Fong Yee*	*Good fortune*
8.	*Porcupine*	*Chu Yau*	*Good fortune*
9.	*Rat*	*Chai Chuen*	*Bad fortune*
10.	*Leopard*	*King Tan*	*Bad fortune*
11.	*Griffon*	*Yik Yin*	*Bad fortune*
12.	*Bat*	*Kin Hung*	*Bad fortune*
13.	*Pheasant*	*Kwing Sun*	*Good fortune*
14.	*Gibbon*	*Chong Foo*	*Good fortune*
15.	*Cock*	*Ma Mou*	*Bad fortune*
16.	*Crow*	*Lan Lung*	*Good fortune*
17.	*Horse*	*Woo Sing*	*Good fortune*
18.	*Earthworm*	*Wong Leung*	*Bad fortune*
19.	*Deer*	*Chan Chuen*	*Good fortune*
20.	*Monkey*	*Foo Chuen*	*Bad fortune*

21.	*Snake*	*Do Mo*	*Good fortune*
22.	*Stag*	*Yin Kau*	*Good fortune*
23.	*Sheep*	*Wong Ban*	*Bad fortune*
24.	*Tapir*	*Yam Kwang*	*Bad fortune*
25.	*Swallow*	*Lee Chung*	*Bad fortune*
26.	*Ox*	*Man San*	*Good fortune*
27.	*Tiger*	*Kai Tong*	*Bad fortune*
28.	*Pig*	*Lan Chun*	*Good fortune*

THE FOUR ARRANGEMENTS OF CONSTELLATIONS

The Four Arrangements contain between them the Twenty-Eight Constellations. Each arrangement comprises seven of the constellations. They figure in aspects of both traditional medicine and in the martial arts, the links with the soldier heroes being of significance. The Four Arrangements are seen as being in the shape of four animals and are also associated with the four seasons and the four directions (see pp. 96–7).

1. Green Dragon Shape

This is linked with the east and with spring. It represents the first seven constellations.

2. Tortoise Snake Shape

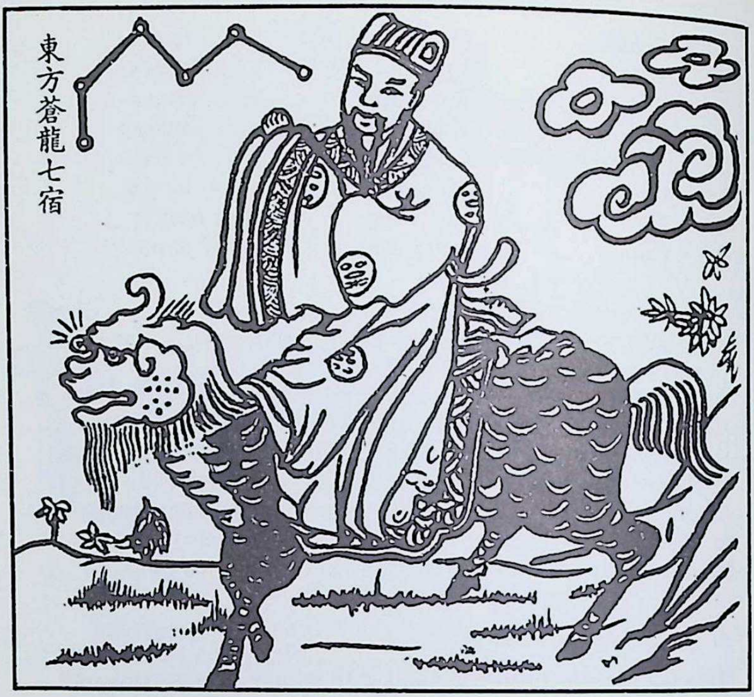
This is linked with the north and with winter. It represents the fourth block of seven constellations.

3. White Tiger Shape

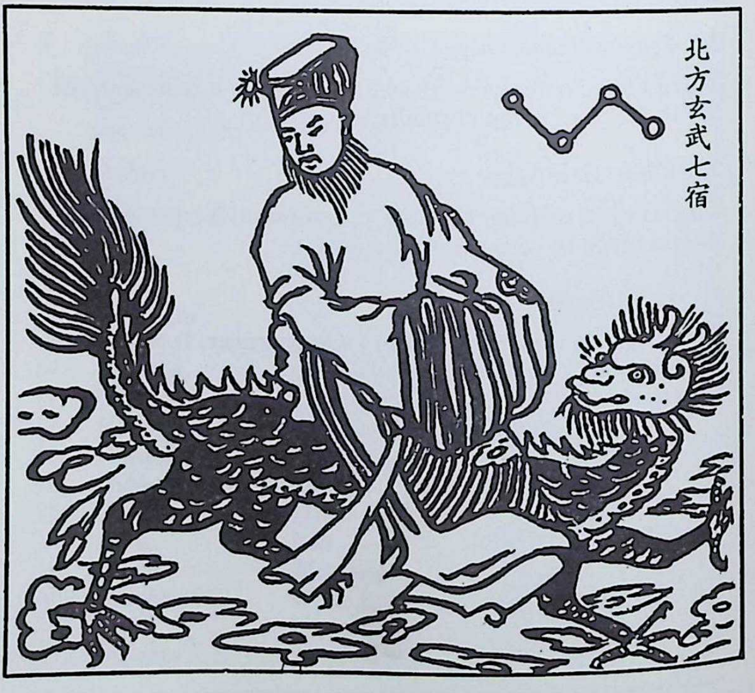
This is linked with the west and with autumn. It represents the second block of seven constellations.

4. Vermilion Bird Shape

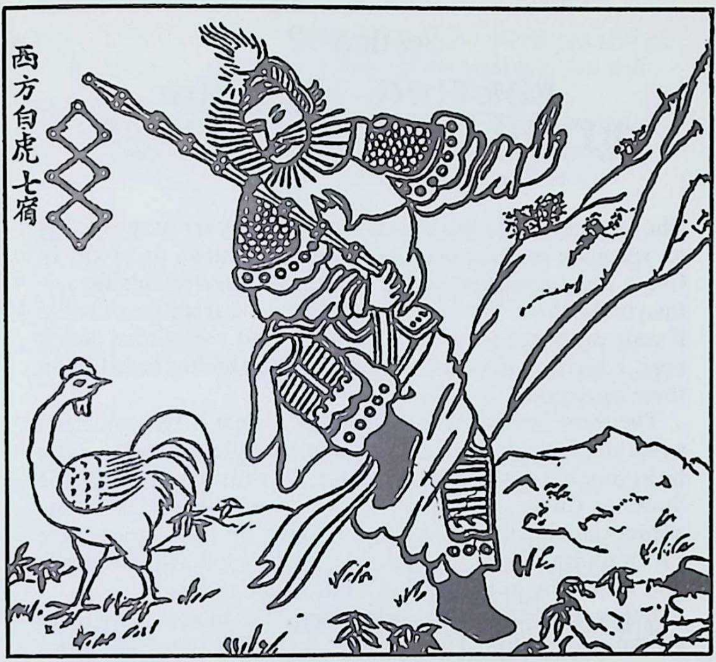
This is linked with the south and with summer. It represents the third block of seven constellations.



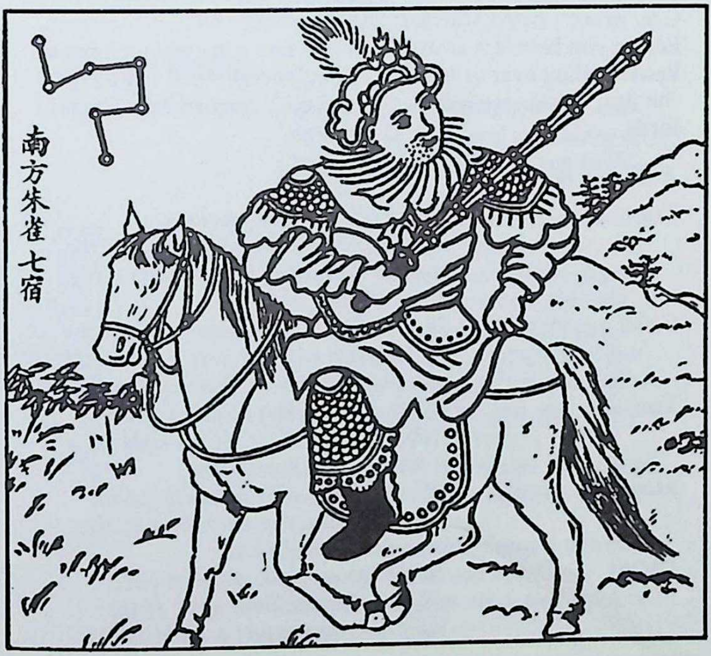
1



2



3



4

Section 12

FORTUNE-TELLING BY PHYSICAL SENSATIONS

The experience of a flushed cheek, a burning ear or the feeling of 'someone walking over your grave' is known to us all. In China these sensations were accorded a greater significance than in the West. While we in the West have traditions such as if your ear burns someone is talking about you, China developed a highly complex system of fortune-telling based upon these sensations.

The most important aspect of this system is remembering when you first felt the sensation. For example, you may have a tic in your left eye which starts at 8 a.m., thus falling within the 'hour' of Ch'en (see pp. 34–5). You would then consult the appropriate block of this chart, looking up the character for Ch'en under 'Tic in the eye'. The reading following this tells you what a tic in the left eye at this time means.

Below are translations of the first three blocks, which are shown on p. 100. The titles of the other nine sensations covered are as follows: burning cheeks; someone 'walking over your grave'; being startled; sneezing once; suddenly remembering you have left an article of clothing somewhere; a pot or kettle boiling over or burning; smouldering wood falling from the fire; being startled by a dog; being startled by a flock of birds.

A Tic in the Eye

Tzu	*In the left eye, this means a nobleman will come to see you. If the right eye, you will be invited to a big party (feast).*
Ch'ou	*In the left eye, this means something will happen to worry you. If the right eye, then someone is thinking of you.*
Yin	*In the left eye, this means a friend will come from afar. If the right eye, a happy event awaits you.*
Mao	*In the left eye, this means a special guest will come. If the right eye, then everything will go well.*
Ch'en	*In the left eye, this means a close friend will come from afar. If the right eye, then expect a slight injury.*

Szu	*In the left eye, this means you will go to a feast. If the right eye, you will have a quarrel or a disaster.*
Wu	*In the left eye, this means you will eat and drink heartily. If the right eye, beware or there will be a disaster.*
Wei	*In the left eye, this means you are safe and plans go well. If the right eye, then you will have a minor happy event.*
Shen	*In the left eye, this means you will lose money. If the right eye, then you will be thinking of your loved one very much.*
Yu	*In the left eye, this means a guest is coming. This is also true for the right eye, but from far away.*
Hsu	*In the left eye, this means a guest is coming. If the right eye, then you will go to a big gathering.*
Hai	*In the left eye, this means a friend is coming. If the right eye, beware trouble in court.*

Ringing in the Ears

Tzu	*In the left ear, this means that your girlfriend or loved one is thinking of you. If in right ear, then you will lose money.*
Ch'ou	*In the left ear, this means you will have a quarrel. If the right ear, then you will have a more serious dispute.*
Yin	*In the left ear, this means you will lose some money. If the right ear, then you will be rushed off your feet.*
Mao	*In the left ear, this means you will have a feast. If the right ear, then a friend will come to visit.*
Ch'en	*In the left ear, this means you will go on a journey. If the right ear, then a friend is on his way.*
Szu	*In the left ear, this means a terrible and tragic event will befall you. If the right ear, then all is well (luck is coming).*

眼跳法

子時
左有貴人
右有飲食

丑時
左有憂心
右有人思

寅時
左遠人來
右喜事至

卯時
左貴客來
右平安吉

辰時
左遠客來
右主損害

巳時
左有飲食
右主凶惡

午時
左主飲食
右有凶事

未時
左主吉昌
右有小喜

申時
左有損財
右有女思

酉時
左有客來
右遠客至

戌時
左有客至
右主聚會

亥時
左主客至
右主官非

耳鳴法

子時
左主女思
右主失財

丑時
左主口舌
右主爭訟

寅時
左主失財
右主心急

卯時
左主飲食
右主客至

辰時
左主遠行
右主客至

巳時
左主凶事
右主大吉

午時
左主遠信
右有親來

未時
左主飲食
右遠人來

申時
左主行人
右主喜事

酉時
左主失財
右主大吉

戌時
左主飲食
右主客至

亥時
左主大吉
右主飲食

耳熱法

子時
主有僧道來商量事

丑時
主有喜事臨身大吉

寅時
主有飲食相會大吉

卯時
主有遠人來相見吉

辰時
主有財喜大通達吉

巳時
主失財物之事不利

午時
主有飲食喜事來吉

未時
主有客至相求之事

申時
主有喜事酒食宴樂

酉時
主有人來言婚姻事

戌時
主有爭訟口舌之事

亥時
主有官非詞訟之事

Wu	*In the left ear, this means you will receive a letter from far away. If the right ear, then a relation will come to visit.*
Wei	*In the left ear, this means you will have a drink or a feast. If the right ear, then a friend from far away is coming.*
Shen	*In the left ear, this means you will go on a journey. If the right ear, then you can expect a happy event.*
Yu	*In the left ear, this means you will lose money. If the right ear, then you are in for good luck.*
Hsu	*In the left ear, this means you will have a feast. In the right ear, then a friend is on his way.*
Hai	*In the left ear, this means good luck. If the right ear, then feasting will come your way.*

Burning Sensation in Your Ear

Tzu	*A monk or nun will come to meet you to discuss things.*
Ch'ou	*You are in for a happy event of your own and very good fortune.*
Yin	*You will have a festive gathering with good fortune to follow.*
Mao	*Someone is coming from afar to meet you about some lucky thing.*
Ch'en	*You are about to have a financial windfall.*
Szu	*You are about to lose money and whatever you do will be unsuccessful.*
Wu	*You will have a feast and a happy occasion.*
Wei	*A friend of yours will seek your help.*
Shen	*You will go to a happy banquet.*
Yu	*Someone is coming to discuss marriage with you.*
Hsu	*You face an argument (quarrel).*
Hai	*You face prosecution in court.*

Section 13

THE INFLUENCE OF THE FIVE ELEMENTS IN CHILDHOOD, FOLLOWED BY THE TWENTY-SIX MALIGNANT GATES

We have already spoken of the fundamental role of the Five Elements in Chinese thought (see Introduction, pp. 32–5). Here we can see this in action, albeit in a very simple and basic way.

Each day has an element assigned to it. It is therefore usual for people to know not only their day characters but also the element. Those who cannot remember can work it out from their Heavenly Stem as each stem is related to a specific element (see p. 34).

To work this chart, all that is needed is to find the appropriate block and picture which relates to your element. From top to bottom they run: Metal, Wood, Water, Fire, Earth. Having found that, find the number of the month in which you were born. The position on the plant which has this is then related to the short, cryptic poem associated with that block. Thus, someone born under the element Wood will look at the second block. On this plant, if his birth month is the sixth month, he is at the base of the plant. The poem alongside tells him that this means he will have many girlfriends! This chart is not accorded great reverence and is more in the nature of mild amusement than that of serious intent.

Under Metal

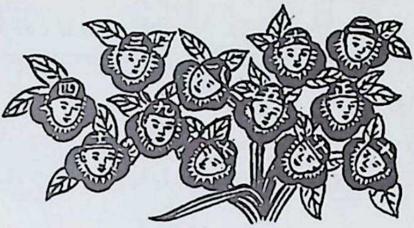
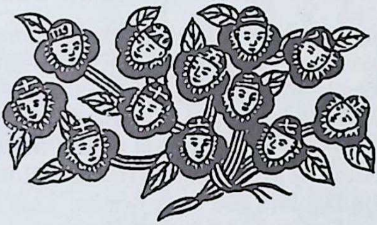
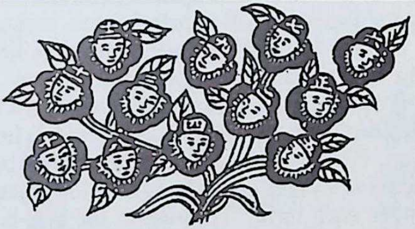
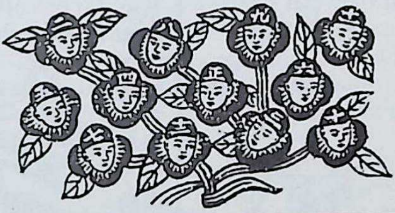
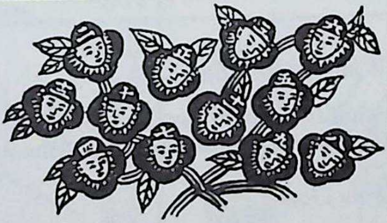
On the base, very strong. On top, out of control. The wind blows, you waver. You will be unnerved.

Under Wood

On the base, happy child. This child strong and sturdy. On the base, long life. Good job and clothes always.

Under Water

On the base, many girlfriends. On top, so much anxiety. Disturbs parents with frequent crying. Needs 'honoured parent' or will have short life.

金命		根下最堅牢 樹上搖便搖 一時風動起 呌苦鬧嘈嘈
木命		根下最好養 兜在花枝下 無災壽年長 衣祿終身享
水命		枝下好風流 搖來搖去愁 啼哭多煩惱 過契命方留
火命		花枝受霜時 夜哭少人知 四方風動起 勞苦費心機
土命		花根易長養 在上惱爹娘 狂風来擺動 啼哭两三場

Under Fire

On the flower, snow falls. No one cares if baby cries. When grown up, working hard. Yet no real reward at all.

Under Earth

Base of flower, easy child. On top, parents don't like. Cause of so many arguments. Thrice the winds destroy the crops.

THE TWENTY-SIX MALIGNANT GATES

Following the Five Elements chart comes a collection of twenty-six small but dramatic pictures. In twelve of them a sinister devil figure seeking to harm a young child can be seen. And this figure sums up the whole collection. For this is concerned with the twenty-six difficulties or dangers which face children. The rearing of young children has long been beset with troubles and early deaths. This is reflected in this diverse collection of natural and supernatural disasters. The term 'gate' is used on all these pictures, rather as Westerners might talk of 'hurdles'. Charms, amulets and caution have been the traditional ways of preventing harm. One interesting device is often used. Children are not given a name until they are one month old. On this day, a big feast is held and the child is named. However, the name is often very odd, especially if the child is a boy. He might be called Cow Face, Monkey Nose or another such term. The reason for this is to confuse evil spirits, who are deemed to be constantly on the lookout for children they can steal – i.e. kill. To put off the evil spirits, children are given these odd names in order that the devils will not think this child is good enough to steal.

Gates numbers 9–18 are as follows (reading down the page, starting top right):

9. *Hundred-Dates Gate*

Children to whom this applies should avoid playing around gates.

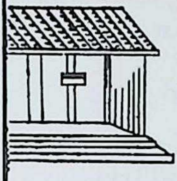
10. *White-Tiger Gate*

These children should not be allowed to use or come near knives, scissors or similar sharp implements.

11. *Fire Gate*

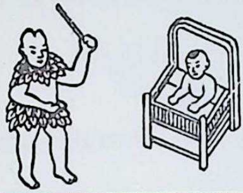
Keep children born on these dates away from fire, boiling liquids and other hot things.

百日關



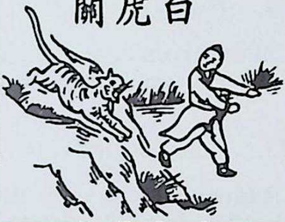
凡正月寅巳時生人犯此百日内忌出入門前

四柱關



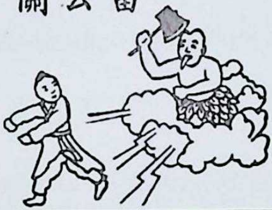
凡巳亥年正二月辰巳時生人犯此忌坐欄杆竹椅太早

白虎關



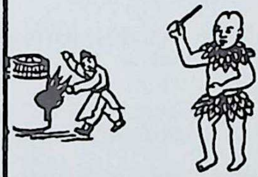
凡金木水火土生人犯此主多血光灾厄

雷公關



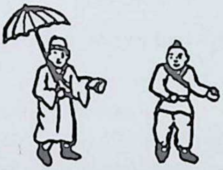
凡寅午申酉辰未亥時生人犯此忌驚鬧羅鼓雷公及大聲叫

湯火關



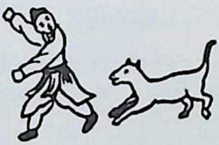
凡子午卯酉年午時生人犯此忌疪痳之患

短命關



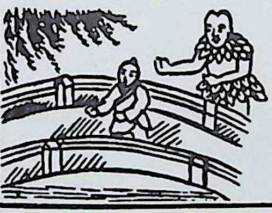
凡子辰年巳時生人犯此主多驚怖夜啼之患

天狗關



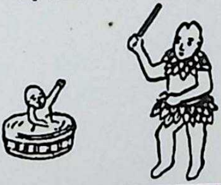
凡八字五行全者生人犯此月内怕鬧犬吠聲

斷橋關



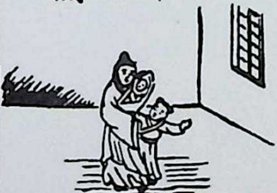
凡正二月寅卯時生人犯此忌過橋汲水照影

浴盆關



凡正二三月申時生人犯此忌沐浴太早

千日關



凡午年寅申巳亥時生人犯此忌三歲上高落低之患

12. Sky-Dog Gate

Until the child born on these dates is a month old, do not let it get near or hear a dog.

13. Bath Gate

Do not bathe children born on these dates when they are around a month old.

14. Four-Poles Gate

Children born on the relevant dates should not be placed on any construction involving poles.

15. Thunder-God Gate

Children born on these dates should be kept from hearing thunder, drums or other loud noises.

16. Short-Life Gate

A child born on these dates will cry from fear every night while a baby.

17. Broken-Bridge Gate

Children born on the relevant dates should avoid crossing bridges, and particularly should not lean over to look at their reflection in the river.

18. Thousand-Dates Gate

When this child is around three years old, do not let him climb on anything, not even someone's shoulder.

Section 14

AUSPICIOUS AND INAUSPICIOUS DATES FOR VARIOUS ACTIVITIES

This section is a catchbag of activities which have auspicious or inauspicious facets. For instance, the following advice is given about when to shampoo your hair, and what will befall you if you wash your hair on certain days.

What will befall you if you wash your hair on any given day of the month:

Day 1	*Short life*
Day 2	*Good fortune*
Day 3	*Great wealth*
Day 4	*Hair-colour disease*
Day 5	*Hair falls out*
Day 6	*Harm your face*
Day 7	*Get into trouble with the police*
Day 8	*Long life*
Day 9	*Good marriage*
Day 10	*Promotion*
Day 11	*Bright, clear eyes*
Day 12	*More bad luck*
Day 13	*Have a son*
Day 14	*Earn money*
Day 15	*Good fortune*
Day 16	*Great bad luck*
Day 17	*Black face*
Day 18	*Robbed*
Day 19	*Nothing good*
Day 20	*Poor*
Day 21	*Sick*
Day 22	*Good luck and fortune*
Day 23	*Great fortune*
Day 24	*Quarrel*
Day 25	*Damage your eyes*
Day 26	*Great fortune*
Day 27	*Good time*
Day 28	*Fighting and arguing*
Day 29	*Good news*
Day 30	*Haunted*

Other topics covered in this section include days for visiting the tailor, bed making, visiting the sick and trading.

Section 15

DEITY IN CHARGE OF YOU FOR THE YEAR ACCORDING TO YOUR AGE

The influence of the planets (amongst which Chinese thought places the sun and the moon – the Great Yang and the Great Yin) has long been a feature of astrology in both the East and the West. However, as this rather brief and quite simplistic section shows, the planets do not occupy a major role in Chinese astrology.

The system used in this section relates age to a specific planet which is then seen as being the star which will exert influence over you for the year. These stars should not, however, be confused with the auspicious and inauspicious stars of Section 20.

The section contains nine illustrations of the planet deities plus a fortune-telling poem which gives some indication as to your fortune for this year. Prefacing the section is a poem followed by a description of how to deal with your year planet.

This star is your life; it is good to light the lantern.
It can bless you, keeping you safe and bestowing fortune and long life.
Male or female, if this year's star is good, you should offer sacrifice.
The nine planets respond to honest prayers.

The description advises that if you have a good star, then through prayer and abstention from eating meat all will go well. If you have an evil star, then earnest prayer will help avert disasters.

The second page of this section contains a list of the ages which are influenced by each planet (see p. 110, the two columns on the left). (Remember that the Chinese count themselves as being one year old at the time they are born.) The list of ages for each planet is divided into two, one for men (on the right) and the other for women (on the left). For the Earth Star (fifth pair of blocks) the associated ages for men are 11, 12, 29, 38, 47, 56, 65, 74, 83 and 92; for women the ages are 14, 23, 32, 41, 50, 59, 68, 77, 86 and 95. The prediction alongside the Earth Planet God's picture (see opposite, centre left) runs as follows:

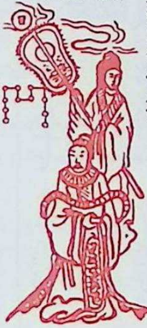
詩曰

此星入命喜燃燈　保汝平安福壽增

男女行年宜解祭　九星下降要虔誠

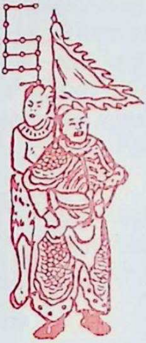
九人生命行年值某位星君按後開下界日期虔誠齋戒燃燈祭之士人加官進祿商賈利增百培婦人遇吉星祭之求子得子遇凶祭之可免災厄也

燃燈式



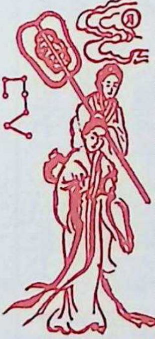
行年值太陽終歲得安康男子宜更喜女人行災殃名曰太陽星光燿天氣處不明朗主遠行有財大人見滋人進口萬事和合女子不客此星宜向東方吉每月二十七日下界用黃錢牌位禱日宮太陽天子星君燈十二盞向東祭之大吉

燃燈式



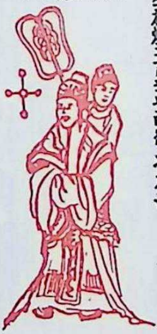
行年值火星守舊且安身女人多災難男命不犯刑名曰災星主痛疾女人產避血光男子官災不利人口不安六畜不旺自宜遵慎每月二十九日下界用紙牌位寫南方丙丁火德星君燈十五盞正南祭之大吉

燃燈式



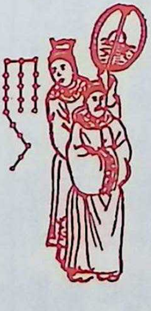
行年值大陰諸事遂其心求名並求利前程宜進行名曰太陰星宜見官有理男子出入凡事遂心女人有疾厄產難之厄宜添丁財則吉每月二十六日下界用黃紙牌位寫月宮太陰皇后星君燈七盞正西祭之大吉

燃燈式



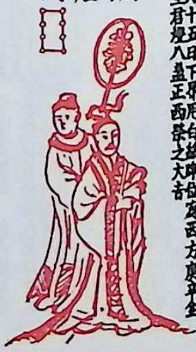
行年值土星災事來相侵出入多不順提防小人心名曰厄星此年見災不安家宅不寧夜多怪夢六畜不旺不利進行需小人暗害每月十九日下界用黃紙牌位寫中央戊己土宿星君燈五盞正西祭之大吉

燃燈式



行年值木星不利是陰人發見微小疾未為遇月德名曰相元星其年男子有眼目之疾婦人有血光之災不妨婚姻和合人口平安每月二十五日下界用青紙牌位寫東方甲乙木德星君燈二十盞東方祭之大吉

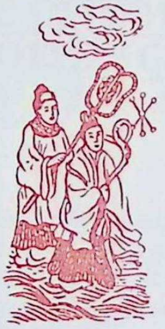
燃燈式



行年值金星凡事不遂心男子喜遷可大忌見女人名曰相陽星貴人見喜添人進口婚姻婦女孕有旺產之災出入提防小人每月十五日下界用白紙牌位寫西方庚辛金德星君燈八盞正西祭之大吉

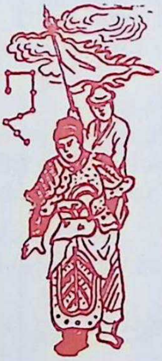
行年值水星　財喜主重興　男子福祿至
女子口舌長　名曰福祿星大人見喜進行
有財添人口女子不利多災難不宜渡河
每月二十一日下界用皂紙牌位寫北方壬癸
水德星君燈七盞北方祭之大吉

燃燈式



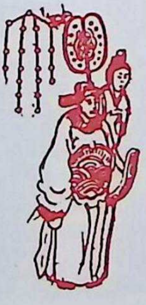
行年值羅喉　主人百事憂　男子官災至
女人也憂愁　名曰口舌星主見官非口舌
眼目之疾女人見血光產見之災凡事不如意
每月初八日下界用黃紙牌位寫天宮神首羅
喉星君燈九盞正北祭之大吉

燃燈式



行年值計都　災害不時生　陰人防口舌
[illegible]可是丈夫
名曰凶星大人不喜六畜不利陰人主口舌連
行有財在家防暗昧不明之患每月十八日下
降用黃紙迎天宮分尾計都星君燈二十一盞
正西祭之大吉

燃燈式



太陽男值年
十四　三二　五十　六八　八六
廿三　四一　五九　七七　九五

太陰男值年
十七　三五　五三　七一　八九
廿六　四四　六二　八十　九八

木星男值年
十八　三六　五四　七二　九十
廿七　四五　六三　八一　九九

火星男值年
十五　三三　五一　六九　八七
廿四　四二　六十　七八　九六

土星男值年
十一　二九　四七　六五　八三
二十　三八　五六　七四　九二

金星男值年
十三　三一　四九　六七　八五
廿二　四十　五八　七六　九四

水星男值年
十二　三十　四八　六六　八四
廿一　三九　五七　七五　九三

羅喉男值年
十九　三七　五五　七三　九一
廿八　四六　六四　八二

計都男值年
十六　三四　五二　七十　八八
廿五　四三　六一　七九　九七

太陽女值年
十六　三四　五二　七十　八八
廿五　四三　六一　七九　九七

太陰女值年
十三　三一　四九　六七　八五
廿二　四十　五八　七六　九四

木星女值年
十二　三十　四八　六六　八四
廿一　三九　五七　七五　九三

火星女值年
十一　廿九　四七　六五　八三
二十　三八　五六　七四　九二

土星女值年
十四　三二　五十　六八　八六
廿三　四一　五九　七七　九五

金星女值年
十七　三五　五三　七一　八九
廿六　四四　六二　八十　九八

水星男值年
十八　三六　五四　七二　九十
廿七　四五　六三　八一　九九

羅喉女值年
十五　三三　五一　六九　八七
廿四　四二　六十　七八　九六

計都女值年
十九　三七　五五　七三　九一
廿八　四六　六四　八二

The person under this planet will have many disasters which will harm him. Nothing will go smoothly and you should beware of petty little men. This is also a bad year for your home. There will be no calm but rather many nightmares. Your cattle will be poor and travelling bad. Beware lest little men harm you. On the 19th of each month use yellow paper and write down the charm Chung Yung, Mao Chi, Tu and light five lamps. Face to the west and worship. This will help avert disasters.

The whole section is known as 'Lighting Lamps'. Through the offering of chants and lighting a specified number of lamps, good fortune is accrued or disaster averted.

Section 16

FENG-SHUI TABLE OF AUSPICIOUS AND INAUSPICIOUS DATES

See Section 1, pp. 46–50.

Section 17

CHARMS TO PROTECT THE FOETUS AND SPIRITS GUARDING THE STAGES OF PREGNANCY

See Charms, pp. 86–8.

Section 18

OLD MR CHOU'S BOOK OF AUSPICIOUS AND INAUSPICIOUS DREAMS

The correct title of this section is in fact 'Chou Kung's Book of Auspicious and Inauspicious Dreams'. The epithet 'Old' is rather appropriate here – for Old Mr Chou is none other than Chou Kung, the Duke of Chou, who is reputed to have assisted in the compilation of the *I Ching* (*The Book of Changes*) and is supposed to have lived *c.* 1020 BCE. Chou Kung's association with the *I Ching*, one of the most ancient and mysterious of the divination books of China, means that he was seen as a major figure in divination by later generations. While we can be fairly certain that this great early mathematician was not responsible for the dream interpretations, it is of significance that he is nevertheless associated with them. He lends them authority and dignity as well as status within the overall scheme of divination.

The dream interpretations associated with Old Mr Chou are very well known and his name and its link has passed into the language in a number of ways. For instance, a teacher finding a child dozing during lesson time will often inquire if the pupil has 'been to visit Mr Chou' – i.e. been dreaming.

The interpretations of the dreams would puzzle any Freudian, as they consist entirely of auspicious and inauspicious messages. The format of the dreams is also of interest, reflecting, as one would expect, the Chinese way of life and beliefs. So, for example, there are explanations for dreams about the 'soldiers of Heaven', about 'a monk giving you cash' (normally, of course, it is the monks who are given money), or about 'a kang being broken' – the kang is the old-fashioned stove-cum-bed made of bricks. There are dreams about 'honouring your parents' and of kowtowing to your wife. The Chinese enjoyment of puns (easy in a language in which the same basic sound can mean up to nine different things) also comes out, for example, in a pun on the sounds for 'coffin' and 'financial windfall'.

Considerable authority is given to these interpretations, although it is important to stress that dreams, while valued, have not been accorded the same significance as in many other cultures. On occasions, a dream has been an instrument of revelation – but rarely just on its own. Emperor Wu, who overthrew the Shang to found the Chou dynasty (*c.* 1028 BCE) had a dream which coincided with his other divinations: 'It would seem that Heaven is going by means of me to rule the people. My dreams coincide with my divinations; the auspicious omen is double. My attack on Shang must succeed.'[1] In the *Shih Ching* (*The Book of Poetry*) only three poems, all found together in the 'Decade of K'e Foo' section, mention or make use of dreams and interpretation. There is a passing reference in the *Analects* of Confucius and one further instance in the *Shu Ching* when Emperor Wu-ting (*c.* 320 BCE) dreamed of an assistant whom, when he awoke, he described and found. These are the only references in the Classics. Compare this with the Bible and the difference is staggering. In Genesis alone there are over thirty references to dreams and their role in each instance is of great import. Helpful indicators dreams may be, but they are not by any means regarded by the Chinese as the most important way of foretelling the future.

In Old Mr Chou's Book of Dreams there are seven categories of dreams. The opening third of each category is given below.

1. *The Heavens and the Weather*

If you dream of the sun or moon just rising, then your family will be fine, prosperous, well educated and have important jobs. If you dream of the sun or moon setting, then your servants will cheat you.

If you dream of thunder, then the Thunder God, Lei Kung, is calling you. This means good fortune. If you dream of a dark, cloudy, drizzly day, then someone is going to die or be killed shortly. If you dream of a phoenix, that means you will receive an important letter from far away, with news.

If you see the sky door to Heaven and through it espy the soldiers of Heaven, then know that a nobleman is coming to help you. If you dream of a shooting star, this means your family will be struck with sickness. If this doesn't happen then you will be in trouble in the courts instead. If you see a multicoloured cloud, then good fortune will come to the family. If you dream of the stars without any clouds, then yet again, good fortune. A star going slowly into a cloud means you will have a child. If you see clouds coming from all four directions, then this means your business will do well.

2. *Features such as Houses, Gardens, Forests, etc.*

If you dream of the forecourt to the house, with bamboo trees growing healthily, then there will be continuous good news. If *you dream of lying on a large stone, then there will be good fortune. Dreaming of playing with small stones means you will have a child. A dream of trees dying but new growth springing up beneath means your children and grandchildren will grow up well and they will be numerous. If you see the grass and trees growing well, then the family is happy. If you dream of crossing a bridge hand in hand, then your wife will be pregnant. Dreaming of walking to town or market with your wife means you will soon buy a property. If you see a bridge which is damaged, then you will soon face a prosecution in court. If you dream of an empty town, this is very dangerous. You could be murdered. If you see a monk giving you cash, then your job is going to go well.*

You dream of an orchard bowed down with ripe fruit. This means that your sons and grandsons are safe and well. Dreams of a garden growing well mean good fortune. You are standing under a tree. A nobleman will come to help you soon. If you see that a kang is broken, then this means someone is about to die. If you dream of collecting water from a well and the water is clear, then you will have good fortune. If, however, the water is cloudy, then beware, for danger is around. If you see a new tomb and the coffin [there is a pun on 'coffin' and 'windfall'], then any worry you have will now be over. If you see a new coffin taken out of a tomb, then you will have good fortune. If the soil around the tomb is bright, then good fortune will occur; but if the soil is dull, beware, for this means danger. If you see someone putting a body into a coffin, then a windfall will come to you. A hillfire means you will be promoted, but leaves falling from a tree means your family is in danger and someone will be killed.

3. *Gods, Fairies, Spirits, etc.*

If you dream of visiting a temple, then this will mean extraordinary good fortune. To dream of seeing statues of the Buddha on an altar means very good fortune.

To see a dead person rise out of a coffin is good, for this means you will earn much money. To dream of a monk, nun or instructor reciting the Buddhist sutras is to be sure of good fortune. To dream of yourself with a female spirit – a devi – means you will have a fine son from your real wife.

4. *The Human Body*

To dream of honouring your parents means great good fortune and prosperity. To see a naked person means very good fortune.

To dream of no teeth, but new ones beginning to grow, *means you will have many sons and grandsons. To dream of a woman with her husband in the water means good fortune. To see any female genitals means you will have a quarrel in the family or with your neighbour. To dream your wife is pregnant means she will have or is having an affair. To see yourself and your wife honouring each other means you will be divorced.*

Hair turning white or falling out means you will grieve about your son and grandson. To see a hand or foot with a bleeding boil is good fortune. But to dream of your teeth falling out means your parents are in danger. Dreaming of saying goodbye to your brother means a quarrel. To see yourself going along with a woman means you will lose money. Dreaming of sex with any woman means you will have unclean thoughts. Dreaming of eating only vegetables means great danger is in store.

5. *Being Out of Harmony with Someone – Music*

To dream of someone blowing a flute or banging a drum means a party will happen. To dream of a sick person crying or laughing means that their sickness is about to go. To dream that you or anyone kills a chicken, goose or duck means very good fortune.

To dream of someone killing a pig is very good fortune, but killing a lamb is a sign of evil and danger. To dream of being killed is very good fortune. To dream of killing yourself with a knife or axe is also very great fortune. To dream of family quarrelling at home means the family will split and some will go away.

6. *Living Creatures, Birds, Animals, etc.*

To dream of a snake becoming a dragon means a nobleman will come to help. If a snake bites you, this means lots of money. To see a lot of snakes means you will plot a devious plan. To see a heron flying into the heavens means you will have a quarrel. To dream of a parrot calling you means a major quarrel. To see a swallow flying to you means a friend will come to see you from far away.

To see a door with dragons is very great fortune and prosperity. To dream of a phoenix means a noble will come to help. If a bird flies at your stomach, then you will have a son. If any bird flies into your family house, then there will soon be danger for you. To see a peacock is good fortune. To dream of a hen hatching an egg means happy news and rejoicing. To see a hen standing on a tree means lots of money.

7. *Clothing, Jewellery and Miscellaneous Items*

To dream of a ship or boat going swiftly means that shortly you will become both rich and a noble. To see your clothes all dirty with mud means your wife's pregnancy will be problematic. To see a fish break a boat means bad fortune. To dream of vehicles not moving any more means that any application you have made will be turned down. To dream of a boat going under a bridge means good fortune, as does seeing a lamp or candle lit. A clear mirror means good fortune – but dreams of a cloudy one augur no good at all. Expensive hairpins being knocked against each other means your wife will leave you.

To dream of a bamboo-leaf roof covering means you will have certain worries. To see your belt fall off means all will be well. To dream of lying on a boat means danger. To see your vehicle broken or reversed means you will have debts or compensation to pay. To dream of a patient being put into an ambulance is very dangerous. If any vehicle moves off, all is well. To dream of picking up money means good fortune. To see a needle and thread means everything is successful. To dream of a golden hairpin shining brightly means you will have a noble son.

Section 19

THE WEATHER AND FARMING FORECASTS

This is a purely agricultural section, reminding us of the basic original function of this calendar. The lists give details of the wind and rainfall expected during each month, plus details of when to sow certain crops. In recent copies of the Hong Kong editions of the Almanac, such agricultural parts have been dropped, marking the shift in occupation of most readers.

Section 20

THE AUSPICIOUS AND INAUSPICIOUS STARS FOR THE YEAR

Running as a constant thread through much of the fortune-telling are the good and bad stars. They are featured prominently in the 'house' sign for each person for this year (see Section 3). They occupy two of the eight subdivisions of each day in the main calendar. They occur as factors in many other divination processes. The stars are seen as minor officials within the complex heavenly system or bureaucracy of the Ministry of Time over which T'ai Sui (the planet Jupiter) rules. Included in this system are, of course, the Twenty-Eight Constellations. The influence of the good and bad stars can be compared to that of faithful servants of the Crown who carry out their duties according to the specific task they are assigned.

The stars each have a name, such as Heavenly Horse or Bright Star, but more importantly they have a special function – a blessing or a curse which they carry with them.

The section is broken into three subdivisions. First come the good stars – eighty-eight in number. Then come four stars which can go either way – fellow-travellers, as it were. Finally come the evil stars. There are 162 of these, reflecting the fact, says tradition, that evil outweighs good in the affairs of the world. Below we give a translation of some of the good stars and their blessings. (The titles have been left in Cantonese.)

1. *Tin Tak Hap – Heavenly Virtue Harmony*
   This star blesses everything you may do.
2. *Yuet Tak – Moon Virtue*
   Blesses everything except hunting and fishing.
3. *Tin Tak – Heaven Virtue*
   Same as 1.
5. *Ng Hap – Five Harmonies*
   Good for marriage and trading.
6. *Sam Hap – Three Harmonies*
   Same as 1.
8. *Tin Yan – Heaven Grace*
   Same as 1.
10. *Yuet Yun – Moon Grace*
    Same as 1.

11. *Iu On – Seeking Quiet*
Generally good; especially good for setting up a statue of a god.

13. *Yick Ma – Courier's Horse*
Good for long journeys, moving house and consulting a doctor; generally good.

14. *Ng Fu – Five Riches*
Good for opening a new business, for trading and in general.

18. *Fuk Sang – Lucky Birth*
A suitable time for praying to the gods and for marriage.

19. *Sing Sam – Holy Heart*
A good time for praying to the gods and for visiting the cemetery to show respect for one's ancestors.

22. *Wong Yat – Vigorous Day*
Suitable for planting.

26. *Tin Ma – Heaven's Messenger*
A suitable time for long journeys and for moving house.

27. *Tin Koan – Heaven's Officer*
A good time to apply for a prestigious new job.

28. *Yung Tak – Yang Virtue*
A time to give donations to the poor and to help the needy.

29. *Yum Tak – Yin Virtue*
Same as 28.

31. *Tin Choi – Heaven's Wealth*
A good time to open a new business, to pray for wealth and to make other prayers.

36. *Look Yee – Six Rites*
A time to give speeches and to carry out the duties of your office.

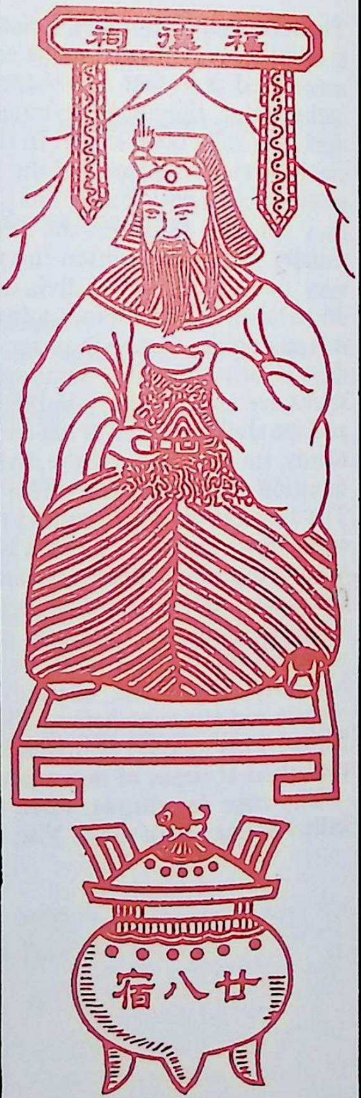
Section 21

CUP DIVINATION CHART OF T'U TI (EARTH GOD)

The term 'cup divination' is not a particularly helpful one, but it is difficult to describe this method succinctly. The equipment used is in fact two shaped pieces of wood. About 3–5 inches long, they have a straight flat side and a curved side making a solid bowl shape. In the illustration (see p. 120) they can be seen in the hands of the Earth God. When thrown, the sides are interpreted as yin or yang, depending on which way they fall, and from this the answers are found. This activity usually takes place within the precincts of a temple as it is a very powerful form of divination or oracle. It is not to be undertaken lightly. Before going to the temple and the diviner, it is customary for the inquirer to abstain from meat for three days prior to the visit. Some will fast for the three days. Joss sticks are also regularly burned throughout these three days and are always offered at the consultation. After washing their hands, the inquirer and the diviner will then formally put the question to the cups and throw them on the floor three times. The answers given are related to two important sets of messages. First, the first character below the resulting set of three 'answers' gives a direct reference back to the Twenty-Eight Constellations (Section 11). By looking up which constellation is referred to, it is possible to get an immediate sense of whether the answer will be auspicious or inauspicious. Secondly, below the 'answer' are two sets of poems, one cryptic and one explanatory. The first four examples are given below. This method of divination is highly thought of and is consulted at times of major personal decisions.

The cups are thrown three times – one up, one down is called Sheng; both down Yin; both up Yang.

土地杯圖



聖聖陰	聖聖陽	陰陰陽	陰陽陰
角聲三弄　無雪心寒 勸君休慮　合眷人安	亢宿金龍　行子丑宮 藏身在未　急避他鄉	氐頭偷看　瞎想佳人 任君舌巧　恐未成親	房生瑞草　孕婦且喜 合眷皆慶　麒麟是子
解曰	解曰	解曰	解曰
貴人扶事有理後有遇時前程 得路喜得平安到老雙全	缺月團圓枯木再生慢行且步 諸事難成	往事勞心求財問事家敗人亡 食無求飽居無求安	牛郎織女難會佳期好事難得 不可向前
斷曰	斷曰	斷曰	斷曰
婚好病 安孕男 行人至	病安行 至財有 婚不成	訟吉財 無婚難 人未至	訟吉病 安孕男 人未至

1. *Sheng, Sheng, Yin*

You are too worried in yourself –
No snow falls, yet you are feeling cold.
Don't fret so much, everyone will be well.

Explanation: You will have a nobleman to espouse your cause. Your future is very bright, and you and your spouse will continue to fare safely.

In brief: Marriage will go well; the sick person will recover; if you are pregnant you will have a boy; a nobleman will help you.

2. *Sheng, Sheng, Yang*

This time is not fit for anything, because of the unlucky dragon star.
You must avoid doing anything.

Explanation: The moon is not full, the trees are dying. If you wait for the trees to regrow you will have a very long wait. You will labour hard with little result.

In brief: The sick person will survive; a nobleman will come to help; you will have some money; marriage will be unsuccessful.

3. *Yin, Yin, Yang*

You will look sideways at your beloved, not full in the face.
The one you love is always in your mind.
You may ask someone to put in a good word with your love
But marriage will still be a failure.

Explanation: Even if you work very hard you will receive no reward for your labours. If you pray for wealth you will not get it; if you ask the god how your family will fare, the answer is badly. You will always be hungry and in need of a place to live; there will be no luxuries in your life.

In brief: If you are involved in a legal dispute, the result will be fair; money and marriage will both go badly; you will receive no help from noblemen.

4. *Yin, Yang, Yin*

If you ask about your wife's pregnancy
She will fare well.
She will bear you a son.

Explanation: In every other matter, your chances are poor at this time. Do not attempt to take things further for now.

In brief: Court cases will go fairly well; those who are ill will recover; if there is a pregnancy, a boy will be born; noble help is not forthcoming.

Section 22

COIN PREDICTION

Prediction by the use of coins has a long tradition in China, the best-known example of this method of prediction being the *I Ching* or *The Book of Changes*. The *I Ching* began as a series of orally transmitted verses based on the trigrams attributed to Fu Hsi, who, according to Chinese tradition, was the father of our present civilization, teaching men the skills of agriculture, fire making and community living. Each trigram or group of three broken and unbroken lines relates to some aspect of nature, society and the individual.

The *I Ching* as it is known today was assembled in the eleventh century BCE by King Wen, the founder of the Chou dynasty. It was arranged by that time into sixty-four hexagrams or groups of six lines, with short verses which King Wen amplified with more detailed commentary. After the king's death his son completed the expansion with detailed commentary on the individual lines of each hexagram.

Around the sixth century BCE Confucius came into contact with the *I Ching* and was so impressed by it that he and his disciples wrote an extensive work of criticism on it known as *The Ten Wings*.

The use of the *I Ching* as an oracle can vary in form. One method involves an elaborate casting of the stalks of the yarrow plant, a procedure which may take half an hour or more to derive the appropriate hexagram. The method using coins is a much simpler form of this procedure.

Whichever method is used, adequate mental and spiritual preparation is essential when using the *I Ching*; in fact, such preparation and an attitude of serious inquiry are vital factors in most methods of prediction in Chinese and Western traditions. First, incense is burned and the question which is to be answered is addressed directly to the *I Ching*. The person making the inquiry should pray, making mention of his or her identity and circumstances. The coins or stalks must be passed through the smoke of the incense before being thrown. All this induces a receptive and meditative frame of mind in the questioner.

When coins are used for the *I Ching*, they are usually ancient Chinese coins, which are round with a square hole in the middle; the circle represents Heaven while the square represents Earth. They are engraved with four characters on one side: this is the yang side. The other side either has two characters or none: this is the yin side. Coins used for *I Ching* prediction should be kept separate and only used for this purpose, as it is believed they will absorb influences from those who handle them which may affect their validity.

Three coins are used, and these are thrown six times in all to derive the six lines of the hexagram. The lines are determined from the bottom upwards. If the coins fall so that one yang face and two yin faces are upwards, this is an unmoving yang or unbroken line. One yin face and two yang faces make up an unmoving yin or broken line. Three yang faces mean a moving yang line, three yin faces a moving yin line. The hexagram is drawn up with the moving lines marked, and the interpretation of the hexagram read. This represents the present situation. Each moving line is then changed to its opposite – i.e. yin becomes yang and yang becomes yin. This reflects the idea that anything taken to the extreme becomes its opposite. A new hexagram is formed which represents the potential situation. When the interpretation of this hexagram has been read, the inquirer can find out how the situation depicted in the first hexagram can become that of the second hexagram by studying the meanings of the moving lines. These are referred to by looking at the interpretation beneath the original hexagram according to the position of the line.

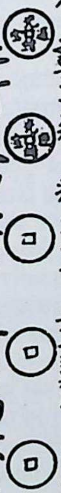
The coin prediction system given here is a much simpler one, using only one throw of five coins which have characters on one side and a picture on the other. It is best used for answering questions about job applications, exam results, legal matters, illness, money-making, finding missing persons, marriage and trading, although it can also provide more general predictions. The overall answer is given a grade ranging from top top, the best possible outcome, to bottom bottom, absolute disaster, with flat being halfway between these. The poem gives a metaphorical picture of this overall answer.

Below are the translations of the first six of the thirty-two combinations (running from right to left on pp. 124–5).

且守君子分　勿用小人言　凡事皆當謹　作福保安然

說書未達　謀事不成　出行錯悞　考試不利　訟事不利　病人不安　婚姻難成　求財不利

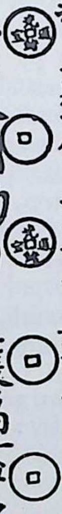
第七進求卦上上



國治人安泰　家財漸漸興　進財求望吉　有福亦平安

求官得位　謀事有成　訟得理宜　病人安痊　求財十分　孕生貴子　婚姻成　家宅吉

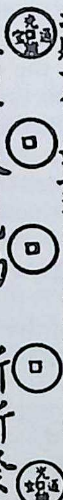
第八進保卦上吉



好德承天佑　門招喜氣新　有人相助力　獲福盡歡欣

求官得祿　謀事有成　訟事和　病人安　求財十分　婚姻有成　交易成　家宅大吉

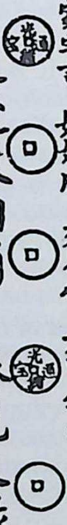
第九獲安卦中吉



目下如冬樹　枯落未開花　看看春色動　漸漸發萌芽

訟事和吉　病人無妨　求財易　行人至　家宅吉　婚姻成　交易合　六甲生男

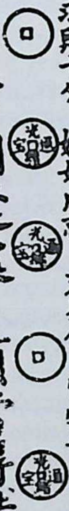
第十遂心卦中吉



時逢融和氣　衰殘物再興　更逢微細雨　春色又逐生

求官得位　謀事大吉　訟可和　病即愈　求財十分　婚姻成就　交易合　家宅安

第十一災散卦大吉



災散福門開　無邊喜氣來　目下相逢處　須當得橫財

出行六分　謀事成就　訟事和　病不妨　求財七分　六甲生男　婚姻成　交易合

金錢卦

第一星震卦上上

彩鳳呈祥瑞　麒麟降帝都

求官得位　考試得意　訟事有理　病即安寧

第二從革卦上平

從革宜更變　騎來合動遷

求官小就　謀事有成　訟事有和　病人無妨

第三曲直卦下平

動作因風便　求謀可託人

求官得位　謀事先成　訟事宜和　病人無妨

第四潤下卦小平

船放江湖内　灘邊獲寶珍

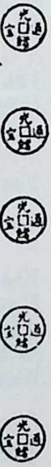
生意得利　謀事可成　求財八分　病人安

第五炎上卦下下

此卦向南方　災危不可當

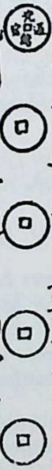
求謀有害　出行平下　求財落空　婚姻不成

第六稼穡卦平平



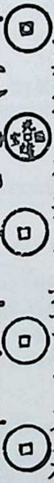
禍除通福至　喜氣自然舒

求財十分　尋人得見　婚姻得成　買賣十分



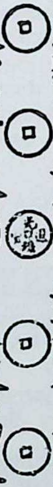
龍門魚躍過　凡骨作神仙

求財八分　走失有望　婚姻百成　交易有功



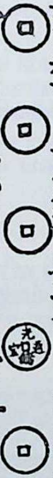
若逢戊己土　事事得遂心

求財不多　尋人不見　婚姻可定　交易大利



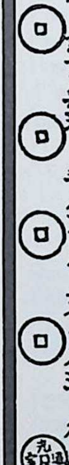
更宜將大用　災散福來居

訟事和吉　尋人得遇　婚姻有成　交易有成



官司多不利　目下有災殃

訟事無理　尋人不見　交易不遂　行人不至



[Key: C = characters, P = picture]

1. *CCCCC: Top Top*

The phoenix flies freely
The unicorn comes to rest on your land
All misery will leave you
And fortune will replace it
A happy atmosphere surrounds you.

You will get a good job in future
Your exam results will be good
You will win in court
Sickness will depart
Money-making goes well
You will find whoever you are looking for
Marriage will be successful
Making deals will go well.

2. *CPPPP: Top Flat*

If your job is bad, you'd better change it
But first wait till the time is right
All will go well
You will be free from trouble.

You will have a fair chance of getting a job
If you apply for something, you will succeed
Trouble in court will result in a compromise
A sick person will recover
You will make quite a lot of money
If you are looking for someone, you have a fair chance of finding them
Marriage will go well
You will make a deal successfully.

3. *PCPPP: Bottom Flat*

The tree moves because the wind blows it
If you ask for help, it will be given
Anything you do in the year of Wu Szu
(Which belongs to the element Earth)
Will be successful.

If you want a job, you will get it
Your application will be successful at the first attempt
If you are patient in court, you will reach a compromise
A sick person will recover
Not much chance of making money
A missing person will not be found
Engagements will prosper
Very good for making deals.

4. *PPCPP: Small Flat*

The boat is in the middle of the pool
On the beach are priceless treasures
Use that wealth wisely and well
Then you will have fortune and not misery.

You will earn money from your commerce
Applications will succeed
You will make a large profit
Those who are ill will be safe
You will not have legal problems
You will find the missing person you seek
Marriage will go well
You will succeed in making deals.

5. *PPPCP: Bottom Bottom*

This prediction faces south
You are in for great disasters
You will lose everything at law
There is no chance of winning
Something terrible is coming to you soon.

If you apply for something new, you will lose what you already have
Travelling will go fairly well
You cannot make any money
Your marriage will break down
You will be taken to court and lose
A missing person will never be seen again
Deals will be broken
You will not get help from a nobleman
No one will visit you.

6. *PPPPC: Flat Flat*

Don't listen to those who spread gossip
Think everything out for yourself
If you do so, everything will be well
You will have no trouble.

Serious plans will not be successful
Journeys will not go well
Exams will be failed
You have a poor chance in legal disputes
The sick will not recover quickly
Success in marriage is difficult to achieve
Money-making is unsuccessful.

Section 23

MASTER YUAN T'IEN KANG'S CHART OF THE SPIRITUAL VALUE AND WEIGHT OF YOUR BONES

This series of charts represents a very particular style of Chinese fortune-telling which is unknown in the West. According to this tradition, perfected by Master Yuan T'ien Kang, each person has a spiritual weight – a Heavenly weight – to their bones. By adding together the weights, a divination can be achieved. The predictions are of a very general nature and are considered as interesting rather than as crucial or decisive.

The procedure is as follows. As usual, it is necessary to know certain of your Eight Characters – in this case the two characters for the year (see Introduction, p. 31).

The first page of Master Yuan T'ien Kang's chart consists of four tables. The top half of the page lists the pairings for the years on the basis of the sixty-year cycle. Under each pairing of Heavenly Stem and Earthly Branch is a weight. The weights are, of course, given in Chinese categories. These are explained below. The bottom half of the first page contains three lists. On the right, the months; in the middle, the days of the month; on the left, the 'hours'. Each has below it a specific weight.

The method of divination is quite simple. Taking your Eight Characters you find the pairing of Heavenly Stem and Earthly Branch for your year. This gives you the first weight. Next, you look up the month number, and that gives you the next weight. Then you find your day – the third weight. Finally, the 'hour' gives you the fourth weight. You add these together and that gives you the spiritual or Heavenly weight of your bones.

Having now discovered the weight, you turn to the following pages (see pp. 130–31). Here, using the shorthand version of the characters for numbers, are all the possible varieties of weight combinations. Once you have found the correct one for you, the poem below gives you the prediction.

Let us follow an example through:

新輯算命不求人

袁天罡先師神數稱骨分量照年月日時推算

（年數）

鼠	甲子	一兩二錢	丙子	一兩六錢	戊子	一兩五錢	庚子	七錢	壬子	五錢
牛	乙丑	九錢	丁丑	八錢	己丑	七錢	辛丑	七錢	癸丑	七錢
虎	丙寅	六錢	戊寅	八錢	庚寅	九錢	壬寅	九錢	甲寅	一兩二錢
兔	丁卯	七錢	己卯	一兩九錢	辛卯	一兩二錢	癸卯	一兩二錢	乙卯	八錢
龍	戊辰	一兩二錢	庚辰	一兩二錢	壬辰	一兩	甲辰	八錢	丙辰	八錢
蛇	己巳	五錢	辛巳	六錢	癸巳	七錢	乙巳	七錢	丁巳	六錢
馬	庚午	九錢	壬午	八錢	甲午	一兩五錢	丙午	一兩三錢	戊午	一兩九錢
羊	辛未	八錢	癸未	七錢	乙未	六錢	丁未	五錢	己未	六錢
猴	壬申	七錢	甲申	五錢	丙申	五錢	戊申	一兩四錢	庚申	八錢
雞	癸酉	八錢	乙酉	一兩五錢	丁酉	一兩四錢	己酉	五錢	辛酉	一兩六錢
犬	甲戌	一兩五錢	丙戌	六錢	戊戌	一兩四錢	庚戌	九錢	壬戌	一兩
猪	乙亥	九錢	丁亥	一兩六錢	己亥	九錢	辛亥	一兩七錢	癸亥	六錢

（月數）

正月 六錢	二月 七錢	三月 一兩八錢	四月 九錢
五月 五錢	六月 一兩六錢	七月 九錢	八月 一兩五錢
九月 一兩八錢	十月 八錢	十一月 九錢	十二月 五錢

（日數）

初一 五錢	初二 一兩	初三 八錢	初四 一兩五錢	初五 一兩六錢
初六 一兩五錢	初七 八錢	初八 一兩六錢	初九 八錢	初十 一兩六錢
十一 九錢	十二 一兩七錢	十三 八錢	十四 一兩七錢	十五 一兩
十六 八錢	十七 九錢	十八 一兩八錢	十九 五錢	二十 一兩五錢
廿一 一兩	廿二 九錢	廿三 八錢	廿四 九錢	廿五 一兩五錢
廿六 一兩八錢	廿七 七錢	廿八 八錢	廿九 一兩六錢	三十 六錢

（時數）

子 一兩六錢	丑 六錢	寅 七錢	卯 一兩	辰 九錢	巳 一兩六錢
午 一兩	未 八錢	申 八錢	酉 九錢	戌 六錢	亥 六錢

以上年月日時配準依數合查算出一身之榮枯評定百年之貴賤善苦排八字合計兩數成骨輕重

〣〩兩	四兩	〤〡兩	〤〢兩	〤〣兩	〤〤兩	〤〥兩	〤〦兩	〤〧兩
此命終身運不通 苦心竭力成家計 勞勞作事盡皆空 到得那時在夢中	平生衣祿是綿長 前面風霜多受過 件件心中自主張 後来必定享安康	此命推来是不同 中年還有逍遙福 為人能幹異凡庸 不比前時運来通	得寬懷處且寬懷 若使中年命運濟 何用雙眉皺不開 那時名運一齊来	為人心性最聰明 衣祿一生天數定 作事軒昂近貴人 不須勞碌是豐亨	萬事由天莫苦求 當年財帛難如意 須知福祿賴人修 晚景欣然便不憂	名利推求竟若何 命中難養男和女 前番辛苦後奔波 骨肉扶持也不多	東西南北盡皆通 衣祿無窮天數定 出姓移居更覺隆 中年晚景一般同	此命推求旺末年 平生原有滔滔福 妻榮子貴自怡然 可卜財源若水泉

What is the general forecast for a man born at 4 p.m. (Shen 'hour' – 申) on the 26th day of the 1st month 1928?

1928's Heavenly and Earthly characters were Wu (戊) Chen (辰).
The spiritual weight for Wu Chen is 1 liang 2 chin.
Month 1's weight is 6 chin.
The 26th day's weight is 1 liang 8 chin.
4 p.m. (Shen's weight) is 8 chin.
The total weight = 4 liang 4 chin.

Turning to the table of weights and poems (see above) we find the following prediction under 4:4 (〤〤兩):

Everything is controlled by Heaven.
You have good control over yourself.
There is not much money when you are young.
But in your old age, good fortune will attend.

Below are further examples taken from Master Yuan T'ien Kang's calculations.

三兩	〣一兩	〣二兩	〣三兩	〣〤兩	〣〥兩	〣〦兩	〣〧兩	〣〨兩
勞勞碌碌苦中求 若係終身勤與儉	忙忙碌碌苦中求 難得祖基家可立	初年運蹇事難謀 到得中年衣食旺	早年作事事難成 半世自如流水去	此命福氣果如何 離祖出家方為妙	生平福量不週全 營事生涯宜守舊	不須勞碌過平生 早有福星常照命	此命般般事不成 雖然祖業須微有	一身骨肉最清高 待到年將三十六
東奔西走何日休 老来稍可免憂愁	何日雲開見日頭 中年衣食漸能周	漸有財源如水流 那時名利一齊收	百計勤勞枉用心 後来運至得黃金	僧道門中衣祿多 終朝拜佛念彌陀	祖業根基覺少傳 時来衣食勝從前	獨自成家福不輕 任君行去百般成	弟兄少力自孤行 来得明時去不明	早入黌門姓氏標 藍袍脫去換紅袍

Example 1

A man born on the 16th day of the 9th month 1943 at Wei hour.

Look up the chart for 1943 = Kuei Wei. Look in top section of the chart: Kuei Wei = 7 chin.
Month = 9th = 1 liang 8 chin.
Day = 16th = 8 chin.
Hour = Wei = 8 chin.
Add these together = 4 liang 1 chin.

Turn to next pages to look up 4 liang 1 chin (〤〡兩) (see opposite). This gives the following prediction:

You will have a strange life, a difficult life.
You are a very helpful person.
In your middle age you will have considerable fortune.
Your old age will be even better than the rest of your life.

Example 2

A woman born on 28th day of the 12th month 1955 at Tzu hour.

Look up the chart for 1955 = Yi Wei. Turn to chart of weights:
Yi Wei = 6 chin.
12th month = 5 chin.
28th day = 8 chin.
Tzu hour = 1 liang 6 chin.
Total = 3 liang 5 chin.

Turn to the chart on following pages (see p. 131). The prediction under 3 liang 5 chin (〣〥両) is:

When you are young, you will not have much fortune.
You will not be able to enjoy the fruits of your ancestors' property.
Be cautious in the use of your income.
Your old age will be better than the earlier part of your life.

Section 24

LUCKY DIRECTION FOR THE DAY

This chart is referred to in Section 1, p. 50. It contains feng-shui details for each day of the sixty-day cycle, plus which good or evil stars are in which particular direction for that day.

Section 25

T'IEN KANG – DAY CALCULATION ON THE HAND FOR FORTUNE-TELLING

The use of this prediction system requires a time and date. If the eventuality inquired about involves a time and date, these are used. If not, the time and date when the inquirer visits the fortune-teller are used.

The hand is marked with characters which correspond to the 'hours' of the day (see p. 134) – these are, of course, the Earthly Branches.

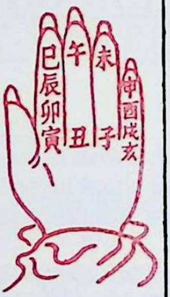
First, the correct start position is found by using the table under the diagram:

1st and 9th month – begin Ch'ou
2nd and 8th months – begin Tzu
3rd and 7th months – begin Hai
4th and 6th months – begin Hai
5th month – begin Yu
10th and 12th months – begin Shen
11th month – begin Mao

Using the hand, the fortune-teller counts in a clockwise direction starting on the character for the month in question – in the case of the 5th month, for example, he would start on Yu (酉). Including that first character, he counts off the appropriate number of days – for, say, the 4th day of the 5th month he would count four characters starting on Yu; this leaves him on Tzu (子). The fortune-teller then looks at the 'hour' concerned. He starts from the new position which he has reached, in this example Tzu. He then refers to the list of Earthly Branches, finds again the character for the month, and then counts from that character to the character for the 'hour' in question. If the hour is, say, 8 a.m., it falls within the 5th 'hour' of the Chinese clock, which is Ch'en. The start character for counting is Yu, the character for the 5th month, which is also the character for the 10th 'hour'. From Yu (the 10th) to Ch'en (the 5th) are seven 'hour' characters. Therefore the fortune-teller will count out round the hand seven positions starting on Tzu, which brings him to Wu (午).

The resultant position indicates the answer to refer to on the next page of the chart (not shown here). These answers are divided into categories according to the question asked, as

天罡時課起例掌訣



正月九月丑上起初一
三月七月亥上起初一
五月酉上起初一
十一月卯上起初一
二月八月子上起初一
四月六月亥上起初一
十月十二月申上起初一

follows: wealth; travel; trade negotiations; buying and selling; whether you have anything in your hand (a game); whether you will find lost things; location of lost things; legal disputes; going to seek wealth; luck or disaster on entering or leaving a building; when will the sky become clear?; whether a child will be male or female, and whether it will have good luck or disaster; whether it will rain or not; what is in your hand?; whether an illness is serious; whether a tic in your eyelid is lucky or not; how to avoid being the subject of gossip; straying animals.

Section 26

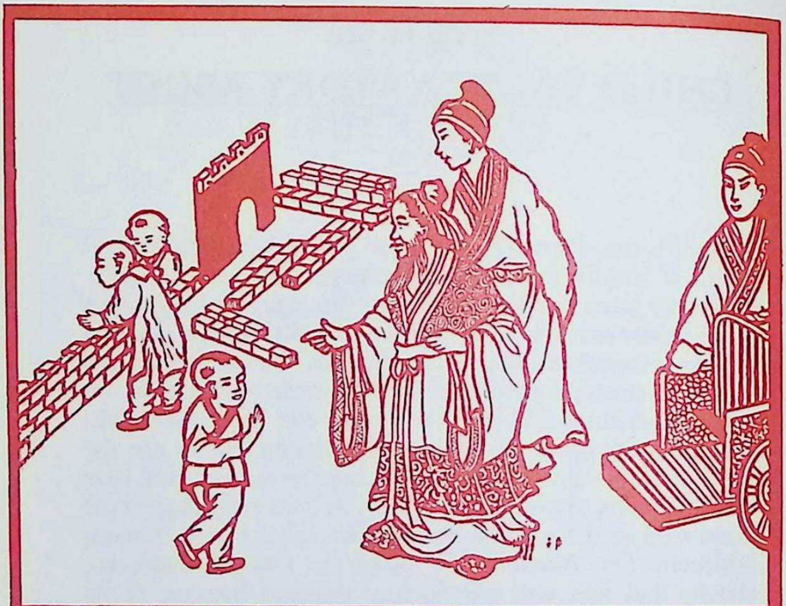
CHILD TALK (A STORY ABOUT CONFUCIUS)

K'ung Fu-tzu, Master K'ung or, to give him his family name in full, K'ung Ch'iu, does not feature greatly in the Almanac. He is only given prominence in one other place, as the greatest of his family name in 'The Hundred Family Names' (Section 32). As is mentioned in the Introduction, Confucian filial and structural concepts permeate the book in the form of assumptions about home life, duty, business, etc. They even enter into the very fabric of dreams. Yet Confucius, to use the Latinized form of his name, gets little prominence. Even here he is seen more as a foil to the young boy's wit and sharpness of mind than as the greatest moral philosopher of the classical tradition. The Almanac was often the butt of Confucian attacks and was not infrequently opposed because of its superstitious aspects. Moreover, those responsible for the construction of the more popularist elements of the Almanac came largely from the Taoist and Buddhist groups. As we saw at the end of the Introduction, 'A scholar should not concern himself with almanacs, but should act as the situation demands.' It is therefore not surprising that Confucius plays such a minor role in the Almanac.

The section entitled 'Child Talk' is a most unusual one for the Almanac. The story behind it is told in the translation below. It goes on to explore in question and answer format many core philosophical and intellectual issues, not, it has to be said, in any particular depth. Nevertheless this section is unique in the Almanac for introducing concerns of the mind and intellect.

Confucius, whose surname is K'ung and whose given name is Ch'iu, and whose personal name is Chung Ni, had his school in the west of Lu [a kingdom in China]. One day, when he was taking his pupils out for a ride in a cart, he encountered several children playing in the road. Among those children only one wasn't playing. Confucius stopped his cart and asked, 'Why aren't you playing?'

The child answered, 'Whenever we play, it is not good, because my clothes might get damaged and so this will ruin my parents' good name. So when I play, my effort won't get any reward. Why should I play? Instead, I am just using small pieces of slate to try to build a castle on the road.'



小兒論

孔子。名丘。字仲尼。設教於魯國之西。一日率諸弟子。御車出遊。路逢數兒嬉戲。中有一兒不戲。孔子乃駐車問曰。獨汝不戲何也。小兒答曰。凡戲無益。衣破難縫。上辱父母。下及門中。必有鬥爭。勞而無功。豈爲好事。故乃不戲。遂低頭以瓦片作城。孔子責之曰。何不避車乎。小兒答曰。自古及今。爲當車避于城。不當城避於車。孔子乃勒車論道。下車而問焉。汝年尚幼。何多詐乎。小兒答曰。人生三歲。分別父母。兔生三日。走地畎畝。魚生三日。遊於江湖。天生自然。豈謂詐乎。孔子曰。汝居何鄉、何里、何姓、何名、何字。小兒答曰。吾居敝鄉、賤地。姓項、名橐。未有字也。孔子曰。吾欲共汝同遊。汝意下如何。小兒答曰。家有嚴父。須當事之。家有慈母。須當養之。家有賢兄。須當順之。家有弱弟。須當教之。家有明師。須當學之。何暇

Then Confucius scolded him, saying, 'Then why don't you get out of the way of my cart?'

The child answered, 'Ever since history began, I have only heard that a cart will avoid a castle, not a castle a cart.'

Then Confucius got out of the cart and said to the child, 'You are so young and already so astute.'

The child answered, 'When human beings have lived for three years, they already start becoming independent of their parents. When rabbits are three days old, they walk along the field. When fish are three days old, they swim to the sea. This is all natural – why do you say I am astute?'

Then Confucius said, 'Where do you live and what is your name?'

The child answered, 'I live in a poor village and my surname is Hsiang Wei. I don't have my personal name yet.'

Confucius said, 'I wish to ride along with you. How about it?'

The child answered, 'My home has a respectable father: he needs me to serve him. My home has a kind mother: she needs me to look after her. My home has an elder brother: I should obey him. My home has a younger brother: I should teach him. My home has a learned teacher, I should learn from him. How should I have time to ride with you?'

Confucius said, 'My cart has thirty-two chessmen. Shall we gamble with them?'

The child answered, 'If the Emperor gambles, people in the country won't bother about him. If an official likes to gamble, it will affect the administration. If a learned person loves to gamble, all his knowledge will be useless. A person of average wealth, if he loves to gamble, will lose all his family's wealth. If a servant loves to gamble he will receive punishment. If a farmer loves to gamble, the harvest will not be on time. That's why I don't want to gamble with you.'

Then Confucius said, 'I want to talk to you about ruling [a play on words is being made here; the word used can mean both 'ruling' and 'levelling'] the whole country. How about it?'

The child answered, 'You can't level the country because it has high mountains, lakes and rivers, and has masters and servants. If you level high mountains, all the birds and animals will have no home. If you fill up the lakes and rivers, all the fish will also have no home. Without ruling officials, there will be a lot of gossip and mistakes in the country. If you get rid of the servants, everything will be in a mess.'

Confucius replied, 'Do you know in this country which fire has no smoke, which water has no fish, which mountain has no rocks, which tree has no branches, which man has no wife, which girl has no husband, which cow has no horns, which *horse has no reins, which male has no female, and which female has no male? Who is the gentleman, who is the rascal? What is the meaning of less than enough? What is the meaning of more than enough? Which city has no market? Which person has no name?'*

The child answered, 'A glowworm has no smoke, well water has no fish, a mountain of earth has no rocks, a dying tree has no branches, a saint has no wife, a virgin has no husband, an earth cow has no horns ['earth cow' means the lumps of clay used to bolster up embankments], a wooden horse has no reins, a bachelor has no female, a spinster has no male. Winter days are less than enough, summer days are more than enough. A palace has no market, a rascal has no name.'

Then Confucius asked, 'Do you know how the world came to be? The meaning of yin–yang? What is left, what is right? What is external, what is internal? What is father, what is mother? What is husband, what is wife? Where does the wind come from? Where does the rain come from? Where do the clouds come from? Where does the fog come from? What is the distance between the sky and the earth, how many thousands of miles?'

Then the child answered, '9 × 9 = 81, this is how the world came to be. 8 × 9 = 72, this is how the yin and yang start and end. The sky is father, the earth is mother. The sun is husband, the moon is wife. East is left and west is right. Outside is external, inside is internal. The wind is from the forest, rain from the pastureland, the cloud from the mountain and the fog from the earth. The distance between the sky and earth is many thousands of miles. East, west, south, north have their own settling place.'

Section 27

ETIQUETTE IN WRITING LETTERS, INVITATIONS, ETC.

The formal style of most traditional Chinese writing is reflected here. Just as handbooks for addressing people correctly have long been found in the West, so in China. In Chinese traditional society the art of letterwriting became highly elaborate with formulas of address being developed appropriate to the rank of the person receiving the letter. It is important to remember that, for many people, their grasp of written Chinese may be quite basic. In many places where the Chinese live overseas, there are professional letterwriters, as there are in Hong Kong, Taiwan and indeed in many parts of China. For those who are literate but unsure of the correct style, this section provides models for most social occasions and is a very real help in many circumstances.

In the following example, a bride's family thank their son-in-law for his gifts and say that they will give him a set of gifts in return. The gifts are examples and may vary. The message should be written on a red card.

I give you this thanks card and one hat, a pair of shoes and a piece of cloth, some money, sweets and a cake.

Name
Signature

Section 28

PRONUNCIATION GUIDE TO ENGLISH

As explained in the Introduction, the Almanac is often the only readily available source of reference in many homes. It has thus come to include much which is of a useful nature, such as the stages of the foetus in pregnancy (Section 17; see p. 86) or the reasons for eclipses (see Section 39). Another addition has been this dictionary of English. It has two functions. Each English word has beside it on the left the equivalent word or phrase in Chinese. This is useful. Below each English word is placed a character or characters which are supposed to provide a pronunciation guide. This is not so useful! For instance, to replicate the sound of the English word 'want' it suggests 王, which is pronounced 'wong'! The dictionary is certainly of help in translation of a very basic kind, but as a pronunciation guide it falls into the category of those splendid nineteenth-century European travellers' dictionaries which contained phrases such as 'My postillion has been struck by lightning.'

黃金	Gold 告路	二金	Quinea 堅拿	从大金	Gold dollar 告路打罅
港幣	Hongkong dollar 香港打罅	英磅	Pound sterling 旁士他令	先令	(S) Shilling 司令
便士	(d) Pence 便士	美元	United States dollar 腰喹士打罅	磅	Pound (lb) 旁
盎斯	Ounce (oz) 盎斯	公吨	Metric ton (M/T) 乜推力吞	公担	Quintal (Q) 坤吐
公斤	Kilogramme (kg) 奇路古林	公兩	Hectogramme (Hg) 客吐古林	加侖	Gallon (Gall) 加侖
公里	Kilometre (Km) 奇路笏他	公尺	Metre (M) 笏他	公分	Centimetre (Cm) 新地笏他
公厘	Millemetre (mm) 美利笏他	咪	Metre (M) 笏他	碼	Yards (yd) 丫亞
呎	Foot (ft) 福	吋	Inch (in) 烟台	一担	One picul 温僻哥
一個	One piece 温庇斯	一箱	One case 温企士	一張	One sheet 温士嗑
一条	One bar 温爸	一堆	One pile 温批路	一份	One share 温些路
一滴	One drop 温都笠	一尺	One foot 温福	一丈	Ten feet 吞飛
一打	Dozen 打臣	一个骨	Ouarter 括他	中意	Like 拉克
唔中意	No like 奴拉克	買乜貨	What do you want to buy? 屈都要王施悲		
老寔	Honest 奧坭斯呢	貴	Dear 爹	幾多錢	Howmuch cash? 哮抹治加示
俾夠	Pay up 披鴨	唔夠	Not enough 納阿夜拿夫	減	Deduet 爹突
俾錢	Give cash 叔加示	添	Add 压突	無現錢	No cash 奴加示
要	Want 王	最好	Best 悲斯脱	計數	Connt 康脱
貨物	Cargo 卡哥	好生意	Flour ishmg 夫羅哩勝	要靚的	Want best 烏安啤士

Section 29

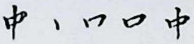
THE SECRET BOOK OF CHU-KO'S SPIRIT CALCULATION

(Fortune-Telling from the Number of Strokes in Your Name)

According to its own account, 'The Secret Book of Chu-ko' is the most powerful and authoritative method of divination in the Almanac. It is also one of the most complicated both in terms of the method used and in interpreting the end result. The preface to this part of the Almanac talks of the book being copied from 'the old times' (see below). The book is credited to Chu-ko, the legendary founder of an early sect of religious Taoism known as Pei-chi or Pole Star. He is also credited, in his full name of Chu-ko Liang, with being the founder of the military magic called Wu-tang Shan. This is better known through one of its forms – T'ai-chi Ch'uan. Chu-ko is supposed to have lived during the Three Kingdoms period (221–65 CE). In fact, the earliest reference to him does not appear until just before the T'ang dynasty (618 CE) and the major manual of Wu-tang Shan and thus of T'ai-chi Ch'uan dates from the Ming (1368–1644 CE). Obviously Chu-ko was a useful name to attach to an old document in order to give it even greater authority, rather as revolutionary Judaism in its battle against the Seleucids (169–64 BCE) looked back to the legendary figure of Daniel.

The methodology of this form of divination is explained in part in the translation below. However, it may be helpful to readers to have it even more clearly stated. The core of the procedure is the writing of three characters. These can be any three characters, but they need to be linked to a question. Below we have given two examples. Someone wishes to open a restaurant and wants to know if it is wise to open this year and if business will prosper. To get an answer, the inquirer writes the name of the proposed restaurant – in this case 'The Golden Phoenix'. In the second example someone wishes to know whether next year will be a good or bad year. In this instance the inquirer writes his own name, P'eng Ma-tin. If someone is about to travel on business and wishes to know whether the journey and trade will go well, he might write either the name of his destination or the commodity he wishes to sell. The only rule is that it must be three characters – no less, no more.

Each character is then divided up into the number of strokes it takes to write it. Every character has a specific way in which it is written and a set number of strokes of the pen. For instance, the character for 'middle' is constructed thus:



In the example of The Golden Phoenix restaurant, the first character – gold – has 8 strokes. As it is the first character it is given the hundreds position = 800. The second character has 13 strokes. As this has to fill the tens slot, it is reduced to a single number by taking away 10. This leaves 3 = 30. (Any number which exceeds 9 is reduced to a single number by taking away 10.) The third character has 11 strokes – less 10 = 1. This fills the single digit position. Hence the secret number of these three characters is 831.

The magic number of charts in this section is 384 as there are deemed to be 384 predictions contained therein. It is thus necessary to reduce the secret number of the three characters to a figure of 384 or less before the divination can start. Thus 831 – 384 = 447 (still too high). 447 – 384 = 63. This gives the starting figure.

With this starting figure of 63 the process can begin. Following the two pages of preface and explanation (see pp. 144 and 146), come twenty-four pages of charts (see p. 148). These charts start off by being nearly full of characters, each ascribed to a specific number. The charts, three to a page, go up by blocks of 100 each. Hence the first three charts go from 1 to 100; 101 to 200; 201 to 300. In all, the charts go up to 12,700. Taking in our case the starting figure of 63, you find the character ascribed to 63. Write this down. Next you add 384 to 63 to find the second number. This will be 447. Write this down. Again add 384 to 447 giving you 831. Write down the character ascribed to this. Then add another 384 to 831 giving 1215. Write down this character. And so on, adding 384 each time. As you progress through the charts the number of characters in each block shrinks, and increasingly the charts are composed of noughts. Eventually the last part has only six characters and ninety-four noughts. You continue to add 384 to your last figure until you land on a nought. This means your message from the divination has ended.

You now need to interpret the message which the process has given you. The diviner will break the message into lines of four or more characters. Each line then becomes a sentence. Having found a meaning to each line and to the overall poem, the diviner may still have to give you an interpretation of the poem for the final message to be received.

秘本諸葛神數

是書係舊時抄本。紙皆破碎。乃遠代之遺傳。世不多覯。相傳為漢諸葛武侯所作。共有三百八十四籤。按三百八十四爻。其中句法。長短不一。寓意深遠。變化無窮。判斷吉凶。如應斯響。較之金錢馬前等數。實有霄壤之別。余什襲珍藏。視同拱璧。今友人有家庭圖書集成之輯。內有藝術彙編一篇。搜輯豐富。多為真本秘本。該主人再三以此書付梓相商。因想禍福吉凶。人所共有。先賢傳授此書。本以指人迷惑。故未敢自秘。謹錄一通。詳加校對。搜殘補缺。以供同好。惟願占者誠心禱告。無不靈驗如神。慎勿以兒戲為之。致損此書之價值也。

民國七年七月　吳縣江蔭香謹識

【占法】

（甲）報字　凡占卦者。必先報字。報字不拘何字。必以三字為度。不可報四字。亦不可報二字。

（乙）計算　將所報之字。先寫於紙上。數其筆畫。以便查字。其法有三。

㊀第一字作百數。第二字作十數。第三字作個數。例如報求財運三字。求字筆畫作百數。財字作十數。運字作個數。餘仿此舉例如左。

運	個位
財	十位
求	百位

㊁凡字筆畫在九筆以內者照算。在十筆以外者。減十筆算。（二十筆同）若恰在十筆或二十筆。俱照一筆計算。例如求財運三字。求字七筆。財字九筆。俱照算。運字十二筆。財減去十筆。照二筆算。餘仿此。舉式如下。

We must stress, as the preface to this section itself does, that this is not a game or a toy. It is regarded by believers to be of enormous power and authority. We do not recommend that it is used by anyone in a playful or lighthearted manner.

PREFACE

This book has been copied down through the ages from the old times. In the old times, only a few fragments of it were preserved and very few people knew of it or how to use it. According to legend, during the Han period it was written down by a man called Chu-ko Wu Hou and consists of a total of 384 predictions. Some of these prediction poems are short, some long but they all contain powerful explorations of both good and bad fortune. It is also very accurate and if you compare it with the fortune-telling of Chin Ch'ien or Ma Ch'ien you will find this method is more accurate. A friend of mine has a large library of books on many similar subjects but he says that this book is the most valuable and accurate of them all. The book of Chu-ko is able to tell everyone whether they will have good or bad fortune. It can also lead people to avoid evil things and guide them to fortune and safety. Those wishing to use it should be honest in order to ensure the utmost accuracy. Do not play with this book or else you will destroy its value.

Written on 7th month of the 7th year of the Republic at Wu Hsien by Chang Yin Hsiang (1918).

INSTRUCTIONS

The following are the key points given in the instructions:

The inquirer should give three words – not two and not four. Ask the inquirer to write these on a piece of paper and then work out the number of strokes. There are three parts to the procedure.

1. The first character is in the hundreds column. The second character is in the tens column. The third is in the single column.
2. If the character number goes up to 9, count as up to 9. If it goes to 10 or more, take away 10. If exactly 10 or 20, then it is equivalent to 1.
3. This book has only 384 predictions. So if the numbers of the three characters are more than this, take away 384 from the total number until you come below 384. Then use the figure you have arrived at to start divination. Continue to add 384 to each total figure until you reach 0. Then you have the poem.

求	財	運
七百	九十	二數

㊂此書照大易三百八十四爻。作為三百八十四籤。所報之字筆畫以三百八十四為度。過於三百八十四。則須減去三百八十四計算。減後仍多。再減之。必減至不過三百八十四為止。假如三百八十五數。除去三百八十四數。即作一數。例如求財運三字。為七百九十二數。減去三百八十四為四百零八數。仍過法數。須再減三百八十四。為二十四。即照二十四查。餘做此。此舉例如下。

報字	求	財	運
筆數	七	九	二
減去	三	八	四
存	四	〇	八
再減	三	八	四
存		二	四

(丙)查字　數已計定。即可查字。其法有二。

㊀第一字照三字合計之數為何數。即在何數中查起。查得之後。記之於紙。再加三百八十四。查第二字。遞加遞查。查至有圈無字。則籤已完畢。

㊁若第一字之數為〇。則須加三百八十四再查。例如求財運三字。第一次為二十四。即是有〇無字。凡遇此等。須再加三百八十四往下再查即得矣。

【實例】

(甲)報字　假如報出【求財運】三字。占有須寫正楷。記在紙上。

(乙)計算　求 為第一字。作百數（七筆作為七百數）財 為第二字。作十數。（九筆作為九十數）運 為第三字。作為個數（十二筆依法除去十筆作為二數）三字合成七百九十二數。依法凡過三百八十四數。須除去多數。此數須除兩個三百八十四。得數為二十四。

(丙)查字　二十四（為第百字數中第三行第四字為）回 依法逢〇加三百八十四即四百零八。（為第五百字數中第一行第八字為）意。（再加三百八十四）即七百九十二。（為第一千二百字第八行第六字為）孜。以三百八十四加之。一一翻出。至翻着無字者為完竣。即得籤詩如左。

(丁)籤詩　求財運三字

意孜孜。心戚戚。要平安。防出入。

(戊)演式

減 七九二
三八四
四〇八
減 三八四
〇二四
加 三八四
四〇八 意
加 三八四
七九二 孜
加 三八四
一 一七九 孜
一加 三八四
一 五六〇 心
一加 三八四
一 九四四 戚
一加 三八四

二加 七九八
三八四 戚
二 四〇二 要
加 三八四
三 〇二六 平
加 三八四
三 四八〇 安
加 三八四
三 八六四 防
加 三八四
四 二四八 出
加 三八四
四 六三二 入
加 三八四
五 〇一六 〇

Example 1

Someone wishes to open a new restaurant this year. Will he be successful? The diviner asks for three characters associated with this venture. The proposed restaurant's name is The Golden Phoenix. This gives the following three characters: 金鳳凰 . Their values are 8, 13, 11, which gives a total of 831. This must then be reduced by subtracting 384 = 447. Reduce again by subtracting 384 = 63. This is the start.

Turning to the charts, and adding 384 each time the following message is spelt out (⋆ = end of sentence):

(a) 63 = /
(b) 447 = 湖
(c) 831 = 海
(d) 1215 = 意
(e) 1599 = 悠
(f) 1983 = 悠 ⋆
(g) 2367 = 烟
(h) 2751 = 波
(i) 3135 = 下
(j) 3519 = 釣
(k) 3903 = 鈎 ⋆
(l) 4287 = 若
(m) 4671 = 逢
(n) 5055 = 龍
(o) 5439 = 與
(p) 5823 = 兔 ⋆
(q) 6207 = 名
(r) 6591 = 利
(s) 6975 = 一
(t) 7359 = 齊
(u) 7743 = 周
(v) 8127 = 0⋆

The characters spell out the following poem:

The pool and the sea are calm.
There is a slight mist in the early morning.
If you meet the Dragon or Rabbit years,
Then your name will be famous and you will be wealthy.

The interpretation is as follows. The first two lines signify all is calm and peaceful. Nothing much is happening. The last two lines tell quite clearly when it would be advisable to open such a restaurant. If this year is not Dragon or Rabbit then do not open this year.

▲第一百字（一字至百字）

㊀天地長春○○君虎貴喙
㊁無○得鼎意○○心不○
㊂一事喜○○○莫祿了緣
㊃離○歷缺行○○黃大一
㊄○○○○○奔眞走沉○
㊅○愁須○細○○君○○
㊆○○○○入事乘舟不美
㊇○○○欲○難○○○木
㊈○○我金○野○○○○
㊉劍岸擬○○可○○打喜

▲第二百字（百〇一字至二百字）

㊀國泰民安○天紅○勿夜
㊁秋禾○○○蝸珠○朦○
㊂虛○○○○○虎○東○
㊃淺秋○意笑簷荆○○○
㊄○利○○過船○小○○
㊅○莫事足鼎參貴平狂人
㊆一道魚相疑上大桑過○
㊇一欲○○○雨白上背○
㊈○○欲心夢○休○渴○
㊉○事萬○鶴深進着○○

▲第三百字（二百〇一字至三百字）

㊀無閑門事暗寶和花門萬
㊁雙望用積安門有汝新先
㊂燕勞進玉垂佳青莫上玉
㊃目可恐月道臨無造大道
㊄一羊若○男心舊○榮女
㊅○休檻己○東○往八終
㊆○○數卯○狐滴人○躬
㊇禍○○三○來有黑螢火
㊈向有勿六大葵人勿功走
㊉不火賓○○乘木○藥三

▲第四百字（三百〇一字至四百字）

㊀閑閒○潛○這龍太曾○
㊁三○耕腰雛○大鐵十風
㊂萬○衆妻○○豹狐○世
㊃山○一自○受萬○兩雙
㊄命採出三○雲馬雲風巴
㊅鵬鼠雨君去徐思○天捕
㊆手水騎一爐此○龍虎○
㊇火東世跳山誹○與東疏
㊈黃蛇九人門有安花春非
㊉須戀客嚦踪神意沸在心

▲第五百字（四百〇一字至五百字）

㊀欲戚遠桃水相喜意見一
㊁怪馬却黃別樂過月路春
㊂萬鵬肆帶桃隱無四不波
㊃眞盡沉財空臉着無雨平
㊄正子紛紅橋深湖物而遲
㊅馬離足有湖深江濟一難
㊆心身事向一車何鱗傾鬼
㊇福獨不雲戟淵欲一喜以
㊈報鼠起喜有來樂如月間
㊉葉事上夢霜展疴易路角

▲第六百字（五百〇一字至六百字）

㊀五月朧事名止明寶居几
㊁伏和邊事水月心迷中前
㊂棘謀奇過暗在堪一險棹
㊃可子一大莫歎前不折詳

Example 2

A person wishes to know whether the coming year will be auspicious or inauspicious for him. The diviner asks for the three characters of his name. They are 彭 馬 田. Their values are 12, 10, 5. This gives 215. Now the question must be asked specifically, otherwise the general use of a name will not be seen as specific enough to gain a clear answer. 'Will next year be good or bad for me?' As 215 falls below 385, this can be the start number.

(a) 215 = 安
(b) 599 = 坦
(c) 983 = 路
(d) 1367 = 平
(e) 1751 = 夷 ★
(f) 2135 = 雲
(g) 2519 = 中
(h) 2903 = 一
(i) 3287 = 雁
(j) 3671 = 飛 ★
(k) 4055 = 桃
(l) 4439 = 花
(m) 4823 = 逢
(n) 5207 = 驟
(o) 5591 = 雨 ★
(p) 5975 = 水
(q) 6359 = 畔
(r) 6743 = 女
(s) 7127 = 頻
(t) 7511 = 啼
(u) 7895 = 0★

The poem reads:

> *The road is straight and steady in front of you.*
> *The wild goose is flying through the clouds in the sky.*
> *There is a sudden shower over the peach tree.*
> *At the riverbank there is a girl calling loudly.*

The interpretation is that you cannot achieve what you want all by yourself. You should seek help from others; with that help, you will be successful.

Section 30

LISTS SHOWING FOUR DIFFERENT STYLES OF WRITING CERTAIN CHARACTERS

This section is a further element of the practical educational dimension of the Almanac. Preserved in its middle is a classic-style primer. This is the sort of book that all students starting on the long and hard path to the Imperial examinations would have used. Similar to the nineteenth-century primers beloved of English educators, it contains simple proverbs or statements just like those which adorned the copperplate primers of English schools. 'A fool and his money are soon parted' is the general level and style. Since the Imperial examination ceased in 1912 and the whole Confucian style of education decayed until overthrown by the new regime in 1949, this primer is of some historical interest. It also has a very pragmatic function. It contains a considerable number of characters (twenty-eight pages worth) in the four main styles. As can be seen in Section 6, there are scores of different styles, but these are the four most common.

The first is the ordinary, everyday standard style as used in most books, newspapers, etc. It is known as the general style.

The second is classical and was brought to perfection in the seventh to twelfth centuries CE. It is sometimes referred to as T'ang style. This is used on special posters or for formal inscriptions.

The third is the famous 'grass' style, scourge of all those trying to learn to read Chinese. This is a form of shorthand combined with personal-correspondence style and is used extensively for ordinary writing.

The fourth and final style is Shang or oracle-bone style. The origins of Chinese writings are traced back to the oracle bones of the Shang dynasty (1523–1028 BCE). In order to obtain oracles, the shoulderblades of oxen or the shells of tortoises were marked with either grooves or holes. The shell or bone was then asked a specific question and then a red-hot tool was placed in the groove or into the hole. The resultant cracks were then interpreted by the diviner. The diviner looked for 'pictures' which answered the question put and he would complete or draw out 'latent' pictures he saw in the cracks. These provided the answers. From these answer pictures the written language developed.

四體千字文

天地玄黄
宇宙洪荒
日月盈昃
辰宿列張
寒來暑往
秋收冬藏
閏餘成歲
律呂調陽

天地玄黄
宇宙洪荒
日月盈昃
辰宿列張
寒来暑往
秋收冬藏
閏餘成歲
律呂調陽

天地玄黄
宇宙洪荒
日月盈昃
辰宿列張
寒來暑往
秋收冬藏
閏餘成歲
律呂調陽

天地玄黄
宇宙洪荒
日月盈昃
辰宿列張
寒來暑往
秋收冬藏
閏餘成歲
律呂調陽

Section 31

TELEGRAM NUMERATION OF CHINESE CHARACTERS

The difficulties posed by Chinese characters when using modern communication techniques are many and vast. Anyone who has seen a Chinese typewriter will understand.

This problem first became a major one when the telegraph was invented. There is no way that characters as such can be sent by telegraph or by telex. Instead, a system of numeration of characters was devised. All the main characters are given a number and a Chinese telegram consists of a string of numbers which are then turned into their character equivalents. The Almanac lists nearly 8000 numbered characters. The system is also used by Western publications which cannot print characters but wish to indicate the specific characters behind, for example, someone's name, as in reports of government officials carried in the *BBC Summary of World Broadcasts – Far East*. There have been various attempts to abolish or fundamentally alter the writing of Chinese characters in the last sixty years, but none has ever been fully accepted. Thus the numeration system provides a vital bridge between the grace of the character and the needs of communication.

電報新編

0001 一	0021 丫	0041 乖	0061 云	0081 亮	0101 仗	0121 伉	0141 但	0161 佪	0181 依	0201 俛	0221 倉	0241 倩	0261 傎
0002 丁	0022 中	0042 乘	0062 互	0082 亳	0102 付	0122 伊	0142 佈	0162 佯	0182 偈	0202 保	0222 個	0242 倪	0262 偷
0003 七	0023 丰	0043 椄	0063 五	0083 亶	0103 仙	0123 伋	0143 位	0163 佳	0183 侠	0203 俟	0223 倍	0243 倫	0263 傖
0004 丈	0024 丱	0044 乙	0064 井	0084 亹	0104 仝	0124 伍	0144 低	0164 併	0184 佰	0204 俠	0224 倆	0244 倭	0264 傀
0005 三	0025 串	0045 乜	0065 亙	0085 醮	0105 仞	0125 伎	0145 住	0165 佶	0185 侮	0205 俞	0225 倏	0245 偈	0265 傅
0006 上	0026 銅	0046 九	0066 况	0086 人	0106 仡	0126 伏	0146 佐	0166 佸	0186 侯	0206 俅	0226 們	0246 偎	0266 傍
0007 下	0027 、	0047 乞	0067 些	0087 什	0107 仟	0127 伐	0147 佑	0167 佻	0187 侵	0207 信	0227 倒	0247 傻	0267 傑
0008 不	0028 鍍	0048 也	0068 亞	0088 仁	0108 代	0128 休	0148 佔	0168 佾	0188 侶	0208 修	0228 倖	0248 偁	0268 傒
0009 丐	0029 丸	0049 乾	0069 亟	0089 仃	0109 令	0129 伙	0149 何	0169 使	0189 便	0209 敝	0229 倘	0249 偃	0269 傈
0010 丑	0030 丹	0050 乳	0070 吡	0090 仄	0110 以	0130 伯	0150 佗	0170 侃	0190 係	0210 倀	0230 候	0250 假	0270 傘
0011 且	0031 主	0051 乾	0071 亠	0091 仆	0111 仰	0131 估	0151 余	0171 來	0191 促	0211 徹	0231 倚	0251 偉	0271 備
0012 丕	0032 破	0052 亂	0072 亡	0092 仇	0112 仲	0132 你	0152 佘	0172 侈	0192 俄	0212 倌	0232 倜	0252 偏	0272 傚
0013 世	0033 丿	0053 迷	0073 亢	0093 今	0113 仳	0133 伴	0153 佚	0173 例	0193 俊	0213 停	0233 倂	0253 偕	0273 傢
0014 丙	0034 乂	0054 亅	0074 交	0094 介	0114 仵	0134 伶	0154 佛	0174 侍	0194 俎	0214 俯	0234 借	0254 做	0274 傜
0015 丞	0035 乃	0055 了	0075 亥	0085 仍	0115 件	0135 伸	0155 作	0175 侏	0195 俏	0215 俱	0235 倡	0255 停	0275 催
0016 丟	0036 久	0056 予	0076 亦	0086 佣	0116 价	0136 伺	0156 佞	0176 侑	0196 俐	0216 俳	0236 倣	0266 健	0276 傭
0017 並	0037 之	0057 事	0077 亨	0097 佬	0117 任	0137 伻	0157 佟	0177 侔	0197 俑	0217 俵	0237 値	0257 偪	0277 傲
0018 丏	0038 乍	0058 苯	0078 享	0098 仔	0118 份	0138 似	0158 佺	0178 侖	0198 俗	0218 俸	0238 倥	0258 側	0278 傳
0019 丨	0039 乎	0059 二	0079 京	0099 仕	0119 仿	0139 倮	0159 像	0179 侗	0199 俘	0219 俺	0239 倦	0259 偵	0279 傴
0020 个	0040 乏	0060 于	0080 亭	0100 他	0120 企	0140 佃	0160 佩	0180 供	0200 俚	0220 俾	0240 倨	0260 偶	0280 債

Section 32

THE HUNDRED FAMILY NAMES

This section is so titled because it is common to talk in terms of the 'hundred family names' or the 'three hundred family names' as a generic phrase for the whole people.

The significance, antiquity and power of the surname in Chinese society is not readily grasped by those from other cultures. Through a Chinese surname, a person is linked to a vast network of people, many of whom will be completely unknown, but who will help if contacted in the family name.

The use of surnames stretches back into the earliest records. We know the family names of K'ung Fu-tzu and of that semi-mythological figure Lao Tzu. Indeed, so strong is and was the sense of family name ties that when members of the same family name – Li – became the founders of a new dynasty, the T'ang (618–906 CE), they heaped honours on Lao Tzu. Indeed, part of the official acceptance of Taoism was made possible because of the Li family emperors' desire to honour their distant ancestor.

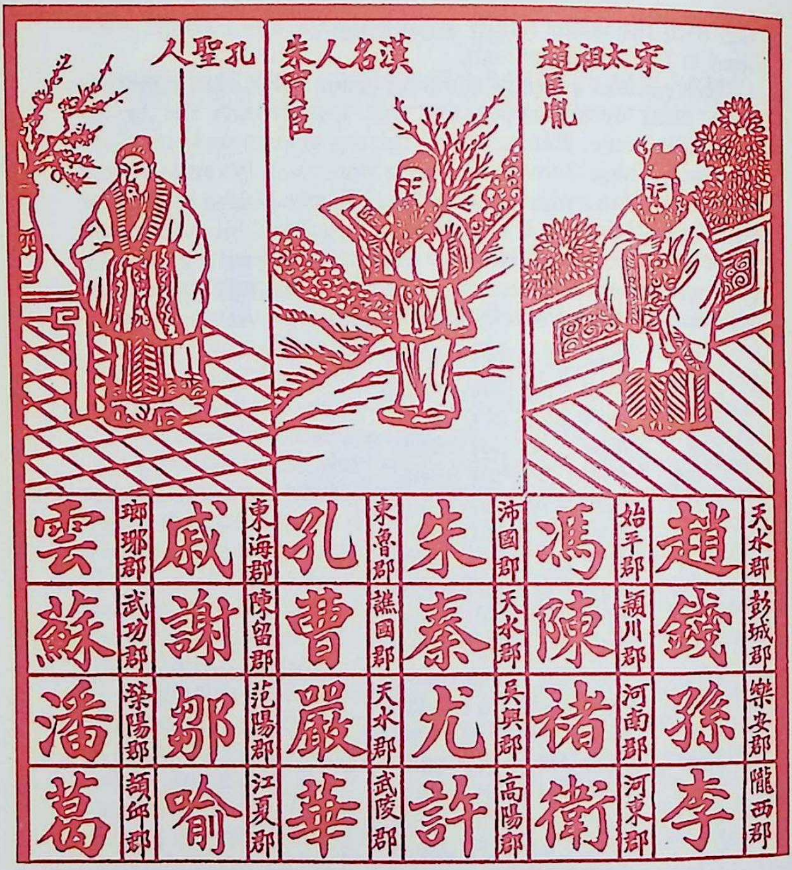
Given the extent to which filial piety and family honour are features of such early material as went to compose the *Shu Ching*, some parts of which date from between the tenth and sixth centuries BCE,[1] it is fairly safe to assume that family names were fixed facets of the family system as far back as the Shang dynasty (1523–1028 BCE). In the English world fixed surnames only go back to the late Middle Ages.

The family name is always associated with a particular place. It is still common today to find Chinese villages where either all or the majority of the population have the same family name.[2] These villages, often walled, physically represent the family members' need for one another. The outside world was hard and hostile. It was only through the family that one could expect help and care. This is mirrored in all the great Chinese domestic novels such as the eighteenth-century *The Dream of the Red Chamber* or the modern *China Men* by Maxine Hong Kingston.[3] Most Chinese today can tell you where they come in the line of descent from the founder of their village or area and take you back even farther – in many cases thirty to forty generations back – to the original family area.

In many places where the Chinese have settled overseas, the family link has proved both the means for migration and a major form of welfare and support in a strange land.[4] Through funeral arrangements, filial payments and general help, the ties with the wider family are maintained and stressed – not least at the major festivals.

This section actually contains some 576 names complete with brief details about the area from which the family originally came. Ranged along the top of each page are three pictures. These show three people whose family names appear on that page and who are considered the most famous person of that line. Below is a translation of twenty-four names and places plus details of the three famous men shown on the first page of this section (see p. 156). The pronunciation is Cantonese. Reading down from the right:

Chiu	*from Tien Shui county*
Chin	*from Pan Shing county*
Suen	*from Lok On county*
Lee	*from Long Sai county*
Fung	*from Che Ping county*
Chan	*from Wan Chuen county*
Chu	*from Ho Lan county*
Wai	*from Ho Dong county*
Ch'u	*from Pui Kwok county*
Chun	*from Tien Soy county*
Yau	*from Ng Hing county*
Hoi	*from Ko Yeung county*
Hung	*from Dong Lo county*
Cho	*from Chin Kwok county*
Yim	*from Tien Soy county*
Wah	*from Mo Ling county*
Chik	*from Dong Hoi county*
Tse	*from Chan Lau county*
Chow	*from Fan Yung county*
Yue	*from Kong Ha county*
Wan	*from Long Nga county*
So	*from Mo Kung county*
Poon	*from Wing Yung county*
Kot	*from Kut Yan county*


宋太祖趙匡胤
漢名人朱買臣
孔聖人
天水郡
彭城郡
樂安郡
隴西郡
趙
錢
孫
李
始平郡
潁川郡
河南郡
河東郡
馮
陳
褚
衛
沛國郡
天水郡
吳興郡
高陽郡
朱
秦
尤
許
東魯郡
譙國郡
天水郡
武陵郡
孔
曹
嚴
華
東海郡
陳留郡
范陽郡
江夏郡
戚
謝
鄒
喻
瑯琊郡
武功郡
滎陽郡
頓邱郡
雲
蘇
潘
葛

The three ancestors are, from right to left (in Wade-Giles):

1. *Chao Family – Chao K'uang-yin*
   The first Emperor of the Sung dynasty [960–1126 CE].
2. *Chu Family – Chu Mai-ch'en*
   Foremost scholar of the Han dynasty [207 BCE–9 CE].
   [Legend tells of his being very poor – in fact a homeless beggar. He saved up and bought books for study and eventually rose to great fame and fortune.]
3. *K'ung *Family – K'ung Sheng-yen [Holy Man K'ung]*
   [Best known as Confucius.]

* Hung in Cantonese.

Section 33

MISCELLANEOUS ACTIVITIES AND THEIR MOST AUSPICIOUS TIMES

This section contains a vast range of activities, many associated with farming, with details as to the best days on which to undertake them. The list covers weaning children, building, buying animals, crops, travel, etc. – a true miscellany of everyday actions for which guidance might be required. We give two examples; in the second the pronunciation is Cantonese.

How to See if a Cat is a Good Cat or Not

The best cat has a short body, charming eyes and a long tail. Its face should have a haughty expression like a tiger's. Its voice should be strong, so that when the rats hear it they will die instantly. When its claws come out, they should be capable of digging up tiles. If a cat has a long body, it will not stay long at home; it will go to another family. A cat with a long face will kill chickens. A wide tail means a lazy cat.

Good Stars and Bad Stars for Marriage

Good stars are: Wong Tao, Sang Hei, Yick Hau, Chuk Sai, Yin Yang Hop, Yan Man Hop, But Chung, Sing Yat.

Bad stars are: Tin Kau, Yeut Yim, Tin Wor, Yeung Cheung, Yum Cheung, Yan Kag, Pei Ma Sark, Ngau Kau, Yeung Chor, Yum Chor, Check Hau, Chung Song, Chung Fuk Yat.

Section 34

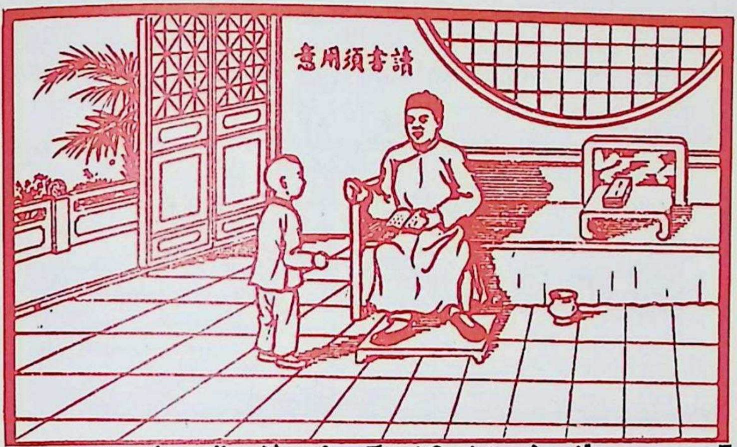
HOW TO JUDGE PEOPLE BY THEIR HABITUAL ACTIONS

This section anticipates in some ways the section on physiognomy (Section 40). In physiognomy it is not just the face which tells you of a person's character, but his or her whole body. By astute reading of how people behave, their mannerisms and 'little ways', you can often judge their personality quite accurately.

The sections opens with wordly advice as follows:

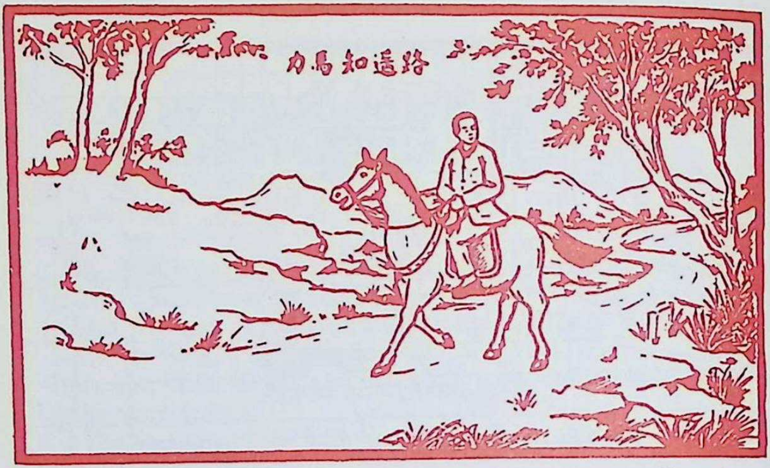
What the learned people of old said or wrote down is valuable and worth remembering. It teaches people to learn about whatever they may encounter. We can use the ancient experiences to help ourselves in our present lives. If you know a great deal about yourself and others, you will always be successful. Whatever you do, first be sure it will have no ill effect on others; do not just think about yourself but put yourself in the other person's place. To enjoy yourself with others, it is best to be with your closest friends. If you want to give advice to others, you should approach those who trust you. Although you may know many people, not many are really honest with you. If we always value our friends as much as when we first met them, our friendship will always remain. If you live close to the river, you will know the character of the fish well. If you live in the forest, you will know the different songs of the birds. Those who don't keep their promises are not friends to make. If you fall on hard times, it would be like a piece of gold changing to iron and vice versa. If you learn one word, it is worth a thousand units of gold, and so whatever you learn, use it well.

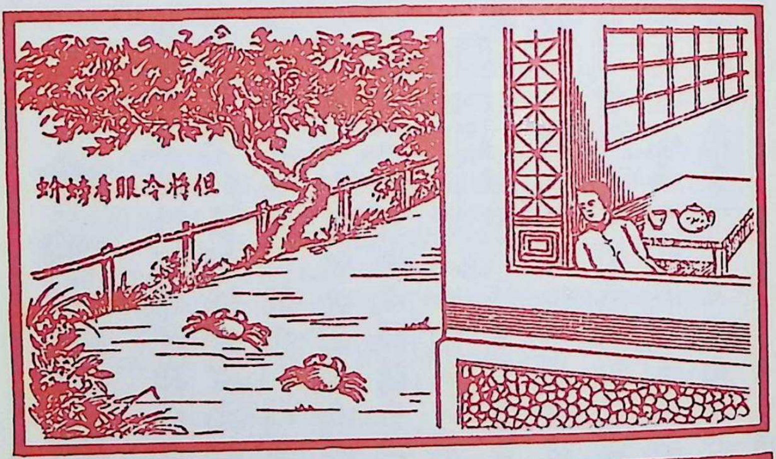
The section then proceeds to take certain characteristics, certain mannerisms, and to provide an interpretation of these. In total, thirteen examples are illustrated by use of woodblock pictures, whilst their meaning and significance are spelled out. For instance, the second illustration shows a man riding a horse (see p. 160). The text tells how getting to know someone is like riding a horse. All may go well at first, but it is only after you have travelled a long way, endured various incidents and come to know the horse's strengths and weaknesses that you can claim really to know the horse. So it is with a friend. The seventh picture in the set shows two crabs. Beware, says the

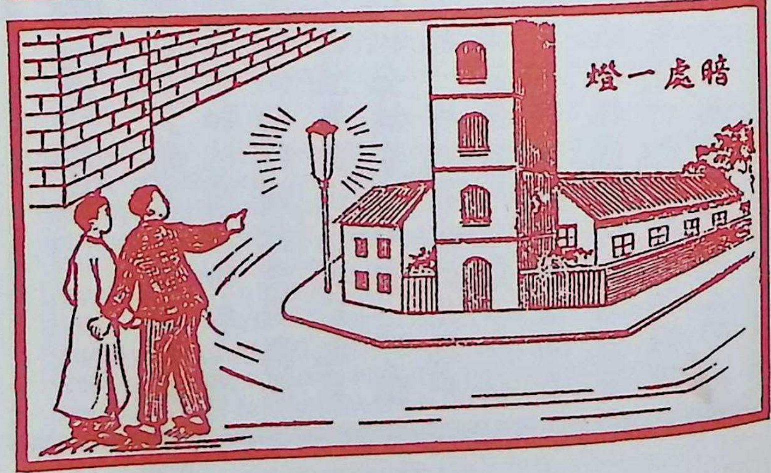


繪圖增廣賢文

昔時賢文。誨語諄諄。集韻增廣。多見多聞。觀今宜鑑古。無古不成今。知己知彼。將心比心。酒逢知己飲。詩向會人吟。相識滿天下、知心能幾人。相逢好似初相識。到老終無怨恨心。近水知魚性。近山識鳥音。易漲易退山溪水。易反易覆小人心。運去金成鐵。時來鐵似金。讀書須用意。一字值千金。逢人且說三分話。未可全拋一片心。有意栽花花不發。無心插柳柳成陰。畫虎畫皮難畫骨。知人口面不知心。錢財如糞土。仁義值千金。流水下灘非有意。白雲出岫本無心。當時若不登高望。誰信東流海樣深。路遙知馬力。事久見人心。兩人一般心。有錢堪買金。一人一般心。無錢難買針。相見易得好。久住難為人。馬行無力皆因瘦。人不風


路遙知馬力


但將冷眼看螃蚧


暗處一燈

text, of people who move like crabs. They are not straightforward but seek to get round you by indirect moves. The eleventh picture in the set is accompanied by the following advice:

If a rich man has a large house and he lights every room in it, what use is that? He would be better to use his wealth to put one light on a dark street corner to help everyone, rather than keeping his lights for his own use.

This section is considered to be full of very sound and worthwhile advice even by those who find other sections of the Almanac unimportant.

Section 35

HOW TO RUN A SMALL BUSINESS

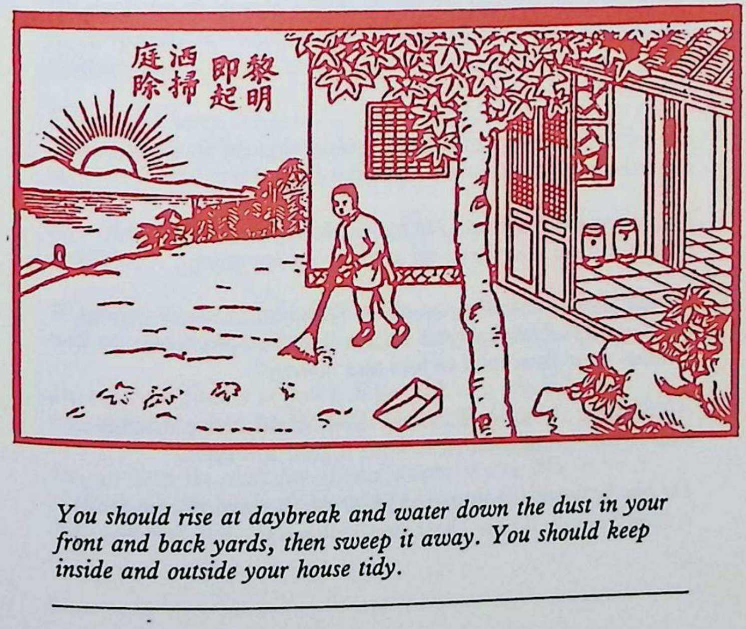
This section forms part of the block of moral and ethical teachings which cluster together in the middle of the Almanac. As with the other sections in this group, it speaks of an ideal person, living according to Confucian rules and strictures. Within Confucian thought, right behaviour was crucial to civilized life. Confucians, as we see in the introduction to this block, saw themselves as models of conduct and sought through office to mould behaviour. It is, therefore, not surprising that this part concerned with small businesses contains little of what we would see as practical guidance, but lots of proverbs and homilies. The following is a translation of part of the first page of this eight-page document.

All young people like to go off trading. By doing this they can make more money to feed more mouths. You must be honest so that your every word is trusted. You should not be quick-tempered but able to remain calm under pressure. If someone scolds you, even when you have done nothing wrong, you should bear it with patience. Do not get drawn into arguments, and especially not into fights. Smile for everyone. Wherever you are, at home or at the shop, be cheerful with everyone. If someone argues with you, be patient and smile. If someone calls for you, reply, do not ignore him. If you call for someone, it should be done politely. If during the day you have too much work to do, let your assistants do some of it for you, but always check it over yourself. If you finish all your work, go and help those who have not finished yet. Do not think in terms of 'his work' or 'my work'. Work hard at all times.

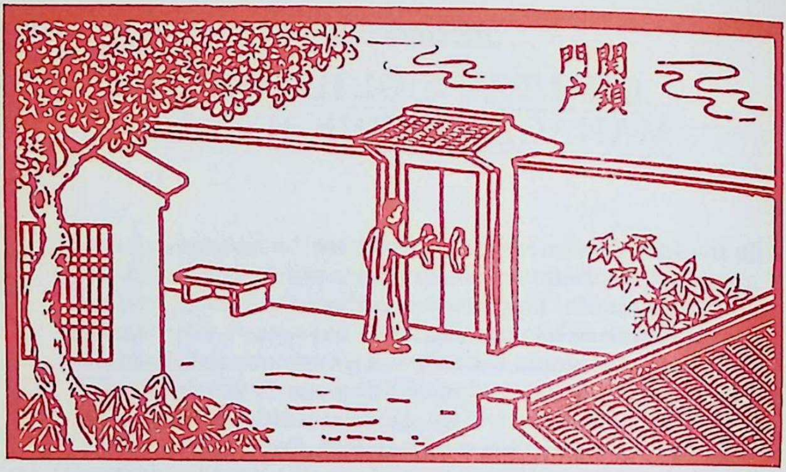
Section 36

CHU TZU'S GUIDE TO MANAGING YOUR HOME

In the Introduction we discovered how the Almanac gives a unique opportunity to glimpse values and patterns of traditional Chinese life. This section is perhaps the most interesting in this regard. While the likelihood of anyone's ever having lived up to this guide is small, it does capture and illustrate fundamental concepts, ways of living and beliefs in a quite fascinating way. If much of the Almanac is folk Buddhism and folk Taoism, then this surely is folk Confucianism. The illustrations not only cover the tasks outlined in the text but also provide a model for a day's behaviour from rising early (note the sun just coming up) to reverencing the ancestors before retiring. The text draws out wider social implications of proper behaviour. The Confucian ideal is here made accessible by exactly the same method as Mao Tse-tung used to explain the Communist Manifesto to peasants: vivid woodblock pictures, with a text which is very short and to the point.



You should rise at daybreak and water down the dust in your front and back yards, then sweep it away. You should keep inside and outside your house tidy.



In the evening you should prepare to sleep, and, of course, before going to sleep should lock all doors and windows; you should check everything yourself.

When you eat your food, you should remember that it is not easy to grow it; remember that every material of your clothing is difficult to produce. Prepare things before you need them; do not wait to dig a well until you are thirsty.

You should not be extravagant in buying food for yourself. It is all right to have a guest to dinner, but do not have your guest stay overnight.

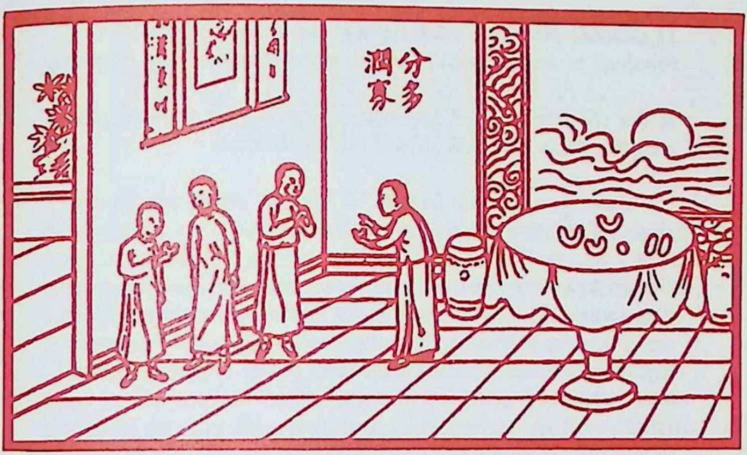
Do not have a wasteful amount of food and drink. Do not buy an over-ornate house or an expensive farm.

Ignore gossiping women. Do not hanker after a young girl's beauty: it does your home no good if you are greedy.

Do not employ handsome servants. Do not allow your wife to use make-up. Although your ancestors are not physically present, treat them with respect and honesty.

All children should go to school. You should save constantly to enable your grandchildren to have a good education.

Do not be greedy about money or drink it away. When you do a little trading, do not cheat your customers.



If you see your neighbour in need, try your best to help. Do not be miserly with servants or relatives or you will soon lose your home.

When you have something to give to your brothers, uncles or cousins, do not show favouritism. When you are teaching your juniors, do so sincerely.

Do not listen to women's talk; if you do, you are not a man. If you love money more than your parents, you are not truly their child.

When you choose a son-in-law, you should not ask him to give you too much money. Your daughter-in-law should be well mannered; this counts for much more than beauty.

Do not envy the rich or lord it over the poor. Try to avoid legal wrangles.

When you are working outdoors, do not talk too much or you will get into trouble. Do not cheat those weaker than you.

Do not be a glutton or you will get sick. Do not kill more animals than you need for food. Do not be lazy.

Do not keep the company of bad youths or you will suffer for it. Seek the company of your elders instead; if there is trouble, they will help you.

If someone gives you advice, listen patiently. If you are involved in an argument, bear in mind that you may be wrong.

When you have helped someone, do not keep it in mind, but if someone helps you, you should remember it.

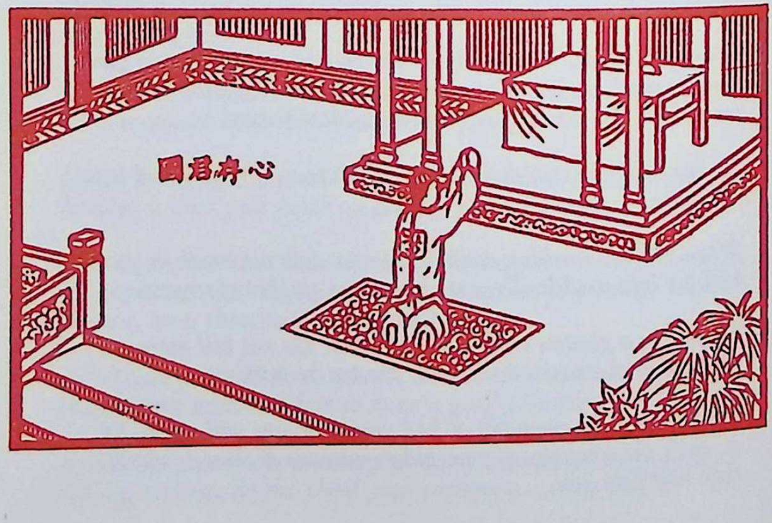
Let others have a little leeway. When you are happy do not show off. Do not be jealous of other people.

Do not be overoptimistic about your chances. If you want to help somebody, do not make a big fuss about it. If you do so, you are not a real help. If you try to disguise your cruelty by a façade of kindess, you are even more cruel. If you mistreat other women, your wife and daughter will suffer.

If you attack people behind their backs, it will rebound upon your son and your grandson. If your home is happy then everything will go smoothly.

If the country collapses, you will have no home.

If you are self-sufficient, you do not need to depend on anyone else. The aim of study is to increase knowledge, not the mere attainment of high position. If the King and the citizens work together, there will be peace and prosperity. Whether you are successful or not, you should try to be content.



Section 37

TRADITIONAL MEDICAL PRESCRIPTIONS

The treatment of various ailments by traditional medicine is now increasingly widely accepted in the West. In China, traditional and Western medicine have long worked side by side. It is surprising that so little of it has entered into the Almanac. This short four-page section is all there is.

It is impossible to try to discuss Chinese concepts of medicine, health and the body in so short a space. Nor is it wise to translate directly the prescriptions given here as they contain no real details of method of preparation or ingestion.

The prescriptions or recipes are for a wide range of common ailments such as asthma, high blood pressure and arthritis and are regularly used in homes today.

Section 38

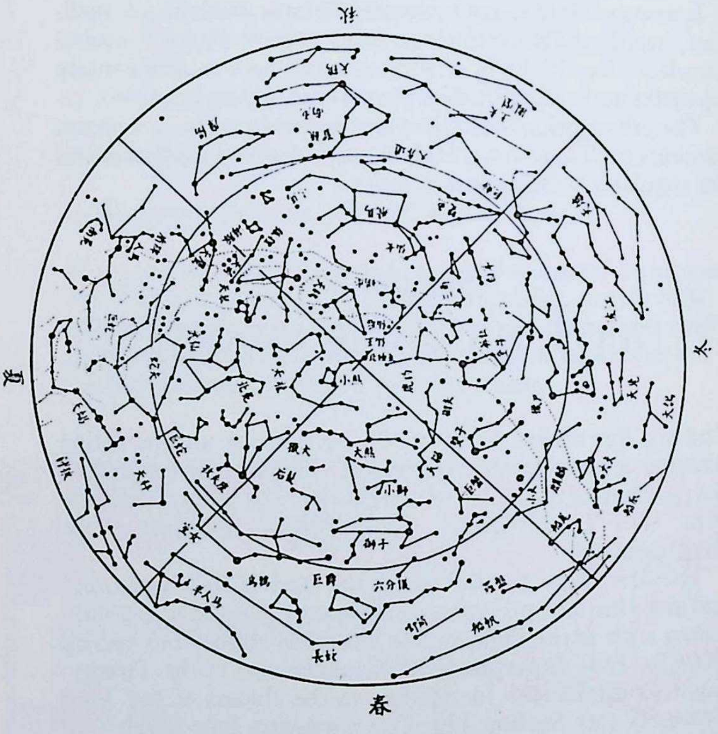
ASTROLOGICAL CHARTS

The six star charts given in this section are an interesting mixture of astrology and astronomy. Five of the charts show the positions of the stars in the night sky. The other chart deals with the Twenty-Eight Constellations and the Four Arrangements.

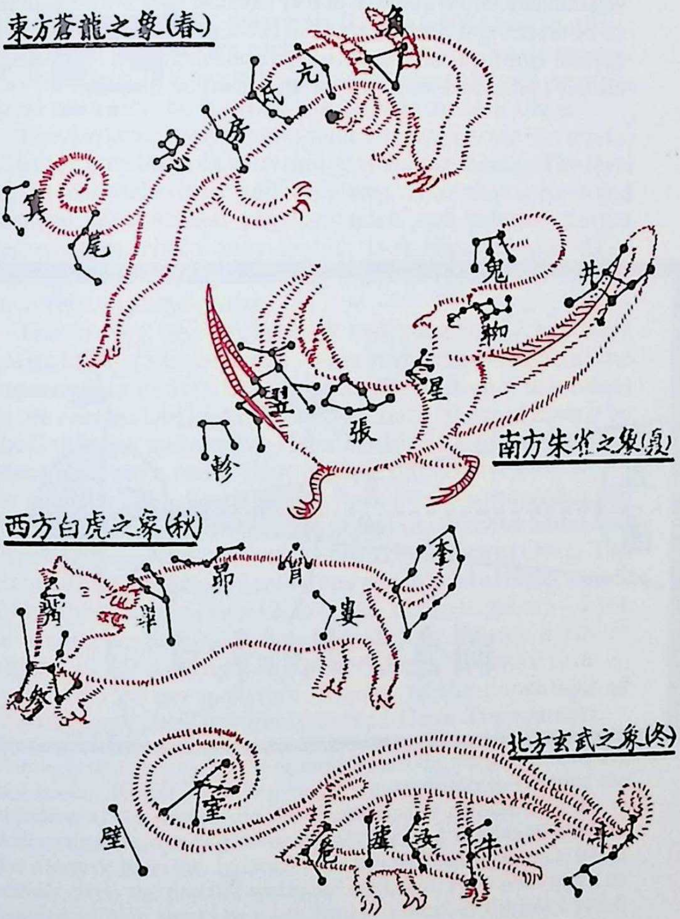
The first chart (p. 168) shows the stars in their groupings and gives the interpretation and Chinese names of each group, names such as the Phoenix and the Little Horse. The second chart (p. 169) shows the Four Arrangements of the Twenty-Eight Constellations in relation to the shapes of the Four Creatures (see Section 11). The remaining four charts (not shown here) show the night sky for the four seasons, starting with spring and ending with winter.

The charts do not, with the exception of the second one, attempt to deal with the sources of the good and bad stars, or the planets. They are really information charts of a scientific nature with traditional Chinese names. The six charts neatly capture the relationship between the 'scientific' knowledge of astronomy and the 'beliefs' about astrology – all part of the same continuum.

星座圖


秋
夏
冬
春
大熊
小熊
小獅
獅子
巨蟹
烏鴉
巨爵
六分儀
長蛇
半人馬
羅盤
船帆

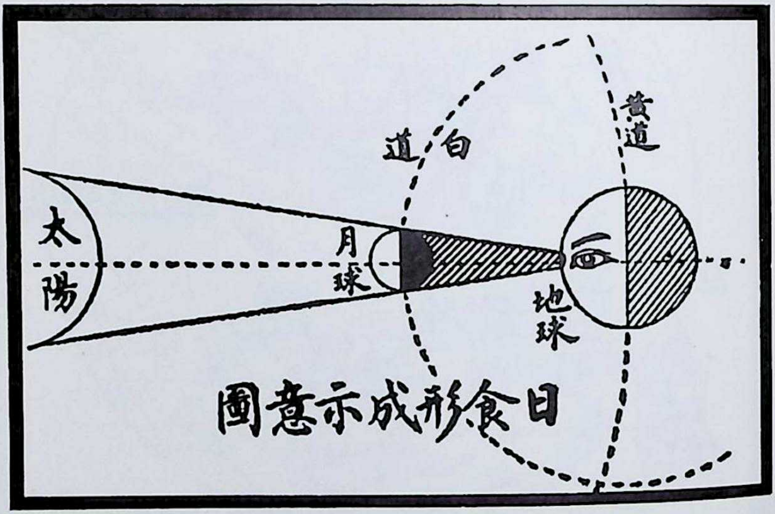
四象内藏二十八宿每象各分七段


東方蒼龍之象(春)
角
亢
氐
房
心
尾
箕
井
鬼
柳
星
張
翼
軫
南方朱雀之象(夏)
西方白虎之象(秋)
奎
婁
胃
昴
畢
觜
參
北方玄武之象(冬)
斗
牛
女
虛
危
室
壁

Section 39

ECLIPSES, ETC.

This section is, like the previous one, essentially scientific and informative in its orientation. Eclipses and other celestial phenomena, often a source of fear because they are considered to be omens and harbingers of ill luck, are here considered as natural and explicable events, a curious intrusion in a volume closely concerned with omens and good or ill luck.



Section 40

PHYSIOGNOMY, PALMISTRY AND FORTUNE-TELLING

The highly complex and detailed world of Chinese physiognomy and palmistry deserves a full book of its own, not least because of the attacks upon it by some of China's greatest philosophers. It is a very well-developed art and still exercises great attraction both inside and outside modern China.

The Almanac itself devotes some ten pages to the two topics, consisting mainly of charts and very simple details. The level of the material is basic and popularist rather than serious and detailed. Professional physiognomists and palmists do not regard these charts very highly. It is expected that those wishing to have a proper reading will go to a professional rather than rely on these charts.

The history of physiognomy and palmistry – but more particularly of physiognomy – is an intriguing one. There is no mention of it in the Classics and the first reference to it comes in the vitriolic and highly acclaimed attack launched upon it by the Confucian philosopher Hsun Tzu in the third century BCE. Hsun Tzu was a major critic of superstitious practices, which he saw as arising from the traumatic events surrounding the end of the Chou dynasty, the period of the Warring States and the early stages of the rise of the brutal but efficient Ch'in. The stable pattern had been broken and was in need of being recast. From this disorder, new ideas – such as physiognomy – arose to answer certain basic questions and to provide a key to aspects of life no longer safely covered by the older rites.

In order to get a picture of some of the dimensions of physiognomy, it is intriguing to read Hsun Tzu's attack:

> Formerly there were no physiognomists, and the word is not found in any books. Ku-pu Tze-k'ing and T'ang-ku began to examine the appearance, the stature and the complexion of persons, in order to deduce therefrom their good or evil destiny, and whether they would live a long or short life. Ignorant folks believed such nonsense, but in ancient times the practice was quite unknown, and books make no mention of it. It would be much better to speak of the heart rather than examine the countenance, better still to discourse on men's intentions rather than the heart, for the heart is better than the countenance, and a man's intention is better than the heart itself. If the intention is upright, the heart is likewise good.
>
> Even if a man's appearance be against him, but the intention of his heart is good, he is a superior man. On the contrary, given a man

enjoying all exterior advantages, if his intentions are perverse, he is a worthless individual. There is nothing more desirable than to be a superior man, and nothing more despicable than to be a worthless person.

Therefore, a man's exterior, be he of high or low stature, gaunt or stout, gifted with fine features or ugly as a toad, exerts utterly no influence upon his good or evil fortune. The Ancients never noticed such twaddle, and writers did not even mention it in their books.[1]

Hsun Tzu's view never carried the day; nor, it seems from current reports in the mainland Chinese press, does its latter-day successor, rationalistic Communism. Reports of physiognomy being practised are quite common in newspapers and in radio broadcasts.

The major texts of present-day physiognomy see themselves as stemming from the great Sung dynasty (*c.* 960–1279 CE) book *T'ai-ch'ing Shen Chien* (*The Mysterious Mirror of the T'ai-ch'ing Realm*, attributed to Wang P'o and reputed to have been written in the sixth century; however, it assumed its final form in the Sung dynasty) – copies of which in abbreviated form are regularly printed today – and the works of Yuan Chung-ch'e, the fourteenth-century physiognomist. The handbooks of the modern physiognomists are highly detailed, giving complete breakdowns of every conceivable variant of physical features such as eyebrows, moles, etc. However, physiognomy is not just concerned with the face. The whole body is studied (see in this connection Section 34); the face plays the major but not the only role. The weight, stance and shape of the body give the initial indications, while the face provides more detailed information. There is an old proverb that 'Your face reflects what is in your heart.'

The selection given below, and indeed the total selection given in the Almanac, is but the tip of the iceberg.

YOUR ANNUAL PERSONAL FORECAST CHART

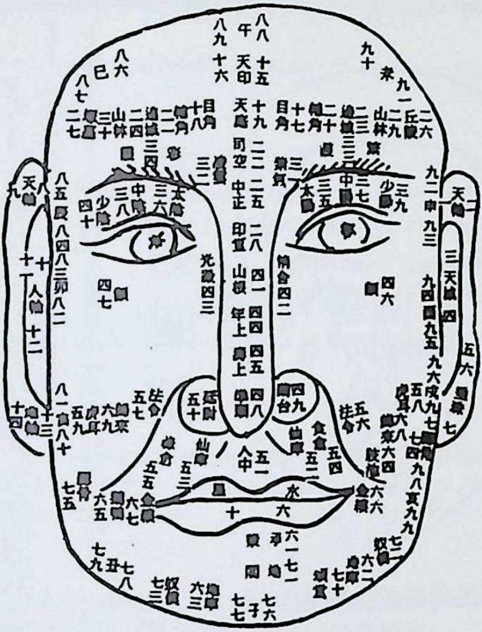
If you want to know your annual good luck forecast, select whether male or female and, if male, then read the figures on the left-hand side of the face; if female, on the right-hand side.

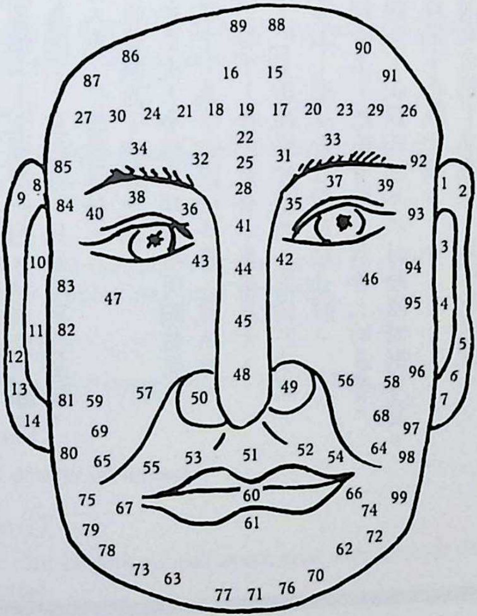
Aged 10–11

On the middle ear. If the ear curls out or protrudes in any way, you will have very bad fortune.

Aged 12–14

If the earlobe is curled, then you will have a long life.


八八
午
八九
十五
天印
十六
巳
八六
八七
九十
未
九一
天庭
十九
司空
二二
中正
二五
印堂
二八
山根
四一
年上
四四
四五
四八
光殿
四三
四二
四七
四六
人中
五一
水
六十
十
六
子
七六
七七
丑
七八
七九
七五
九九
九八
九七
二六
丘陵
二九
山林
二七
三十
二四
二一
十八
十七
二十
二三
三四
三三
三一
三二
三五
三六
三七
三八
三九
四十
八五
八四
八三
八二
八一
九二
九三
九四
九五
九六
天
人
五十
四九
五六
五七
五八
五九
六四
六五
六六
六七
六八
六九
七十
七一
七二
七三
七四



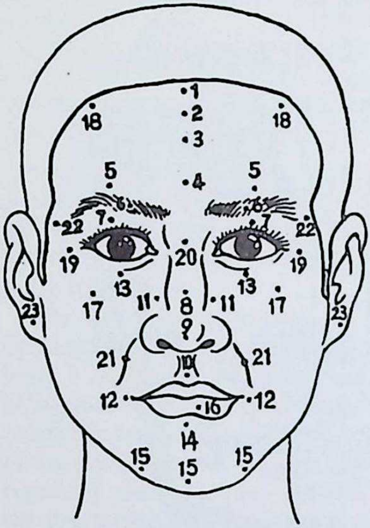
痣的相法

1、2、3－跟雙親、上司及長輩皆無法和睦相處。

4－欠缺思考力、且生活無法安定。

5眉毛上方－因受親友連累而吃虧、財運不佳。

面痣圖解


1
2
3
4
5
5
6
6
7
7
8
9
10
11
11
12
12
13
13
14
15
15
15
16
17
17
18
18
19
19
20
21
21
22
22
23
23

出現在臉部的痣

6眉毛內－主聰明，才藝超群、富貴且具有財運。

7眼皮上－主家庭不和，是屬於破財之相。

8鼻樑上－主經濟苦難、且須防色難。

9鼻頭上－主色難、且須防突發事故。

10人中－子孫運薄弱。

11鼻樑側面－病難之相。

12口角邊－會招來跟飲食有關的災厄

13眼下－為子女操心辛勞、或無緣。

14下唇下－會因飲食中毒而身亡。

15下巴－居住經常變動、生活不安定。

16唇上－須注意色難及飲食難。

17顴骨上－恐怕會喪失社會上的名譽。

18額角－長期在國外旅行時須特別注意。

19眼尾－色難之相。

20兩眼之間－主短命、且可能犯罪。

21法令－主脚部疾患、且須防水厄。

22鬢角－旅行中會遭遇災難之相。

23耳內－賢而多貴，男女皆吉。

MOLE POSITION PHYSIOGNOMY CHART

[This chart is not particularly approved of by professionals.]

If the mole is in:

Position 1–3

Then he will not obey his parents, manager, elders and others in authority. He will never be in harmony with elders or those in authority.

Position 4

He will never use his brain and will be very difficult to live with.

Position 5

He will never be particularly successful because he is burdened by the bad behaviour or errors of his parents. This is also true as regards financial matters.

Position 6

This means he is clever and a skilled artist, which brings wealth and nobility. He is also lucky with money.

Position 7

This means he will never be happy because of arguments within the family and bad luck with money.

Position 8

He will have both financial and sexual troubles of a major kind.

Position 9

He will have sexual problems and should be careful because some major problem will arise suddenly.

Position 10

He will not have many sons or sons-in-law.

Position 11

He will always be unwell.

Position 12

Disaster and misfortune will overwhelm him through drinking and feasting.

Position 13

He will always be harassed by worries about his children. Furthermore, he will not be welcomed by the family.

Position 14

He will die from eating poisoned food.

Position 15

He will constantly be moving and his living standards will fluctuate greatly.

Position 16

He will have great problems caused by sex, drink and feasting.

Position 17

He will lose his good name.

Position 18

He should always take care when travelling overseas.

Position 19

He is a flighty gentleman!

Position 20

His will be a short life and much of that will be spent in prison.

Position 21

He will have trouble with his legs and must beware of drowning.

Position 22

He will encounter various disasters while travelling.

Position 23

He is both noble and learned. This is very good.

Section 41

SONG OF INTERPRETING PERSONALITIES

This section complements both Section 34 and 40. It is a series of mnemonics in rhyme, concerning certain physical features and physical mannerisms which give clues to someone's personality. Many of the rhymes are very cryptic and short but contain, for the most part, useful information. Below are a few examples.

Teeth evenly spaced and sized,
This person will have good food and will dress well.

Well-shaped, longish ears,
This indicates long life.

The heel doesn't touch the ground when walking,
This indicates a short life.

The corners of the mouth turn down,
This person will be friendless.

Eyes longer than eyebrows,
No brothers to help this person.

Eyebrows low, nearly touching the eyes, dozy appearance,
This man will always be afraid of his wife.

THE CALENDAR AND RELATED CHARTS

Sections 42 to 46

The last two fifths of the Almanac consists almost entirely of charts and details concerning the calendar and its use in relation to the seasons, the Western calendar and, most important of all, fortune-telling and divination. The only material not related to the calendar is the section on charms (Section 44; see pp. 88–93) and the final section, the Spring Festival Cow and the geomancer's compass for the coming year (see pp. 214–15).

The core is the calendar itself – the oldest and most significant part of the Almanac. It is because of the authority of the calendar, as we saw in the Introduction, that other material has come to be gathered around it, forming the current Almanac.

The calendar itself is distinctive, with its mixed black and red printing covering forty-eight pages. The red lettering denotes auspicious aspects such as fortunate 'hours', lucky days, benevolent stars and so on. The function and use of the calendar are explained below.

Coming before the calendar are a number of associated charts and sections. Some are very closely related to the calendar itself. For instance, Respected Master T'ung's chart (Section 42) is central to the interpretation of the descriptive term for the day. We explain the precise function of this chart below (see p. 187 onwards), but a brief general description here may help.

Section 42

RESPECTED MASTER T'UNG'S METHOD OF CALCULATING DAYS

The chart contains at the top a set of twelve descriptive terms. These twelve recur throughout each month of the year. They give a basic outline of the type of day it is going to be. The twelve descriptive terms are:

正月

建寅日　往亡不利起造結婚姻納采主家長病招官司六十日一百二十日內損小口一年內見重喪百事不宜

除卯日　不宜起造婚姻犯之六十日內損家長招官司三五年內見凶冷退主兄弟不義各業分散惡人相逢生離死別

滿辰日（天害天賊）為天羅又云甲辰雖有氣却與戊辰同煞集中宮百事皆忌犯之主起首殺人退財大凶餘辰日亦不吉

平巳日　小紅沙有朱雀勾絞到州星犯之主招官司損家長宅女娘婦三五年內重重不利破財大凶田蚕不收產死自縊被惡人尅削

定午日　黃沙有黃羅紫檀天皇地皇金銀庫樓田塘月財庫貯星蓋照宜起造安葬移徙開張出行婚姻六十日一百二十日內進横財田產或因附寄成家大作大發小作小發主田蚕大收獲金銀庫滿

執未日　天賊有朱雀勾絞六十日一百二十日內損六畜傷騾馬成惡疾乙未煞集中宮更忌起造入宅婚姻開張修整等事

破申日　有朱雀勾絞招官司口舌退牲財三五年內見寡婦醜事庚申正四廢更凶

危酉日　辛酉正四廢不宜用事惟丁酉有天德福星蓋照宜安葬還福愿出行開張叅官見貴吉只不宜起造及婚姻嫁娶等事乃比和之日也餘酉日均不可用

成戌日　天喜却是地網諸事不宜犯之主家長病人口不義冷退又云丙戌戊戌庚戌壬戌煞集中宮犯之主首殺人兄弟不義死別生離尤忌起造婚姻入宅修作

收亥日　有勾絞不宜用事犯之損家長害子孫六十日一百二十日內主南方白衣刑害男女多灾大凶惟平日地支與月建陰陽合德者次吉

開子日　甲子自死之金五行陰忌之日壬子木打寳瓶終是北方沐浴之地不宜起造婚姻入宅開張等事戊子丙子庚子三日惟水土失人用之大吉內有黃羅紫檀天皇地皇金銀寳藏財庫貯聯珠衆星蓋照六十日一百二十日內得大財貴人接引受職祿謀事大吉旺六畜益財產亦宜安葬

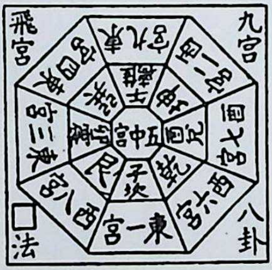
閉丑日　不利婚姻起造防虎蛇傷騾馬踼成惡疾貧病大凶

1. *Build*
2. *Get rid of*
3. *Full*
4. *Flat*
5. *Steady*
6. *Carry on*
7. *Destroy*
8. *Danger*
9. *Success*
10. *Collect*
11. *Open*
12. *Close*

Beneath these comes one of the Twelve Earthly Branches which occur two or three times each month. The chart is divided into the twelve months, of which the first is shown here (p. 179).

Below this comes the detailed prognostication for each day of that month which has these two characters (i.e. the descriptive term and the Earthly Branch). Examples are given below (pp. 190–94). While the details are intelligible to the general reader at one level, they require the interpretation and explanation of a professional fortune-teller to draw out their true meaning, especially in relation to the other details contained within the actual calendar. T'ung's chart marks the start of the main calendrical section of the Almanac.

Following the tables for each month comes a feng-shui chart containing details of auspicious directions related to the Heavenly and Earthly characters and their days. This section is also ascribed to Master T'ung.



Section 43

THE YIN AND YANG CALENDAR COMPARISON TABLE FOR THE PRESENT CENTURY (PAI CHUNG CHING)

This is the next most significant table in this series of charts. Yin and yang are symbolized by the sun and the moon, which harks back to one of the most ancient ways of expressing these concepts (see Introduction, pp. 32–5). This is a table of comparison between the Chinese lunar and the Western solar calendars. The following is a translation of the preface to the tables which cover twenty-eight pages in the Almanac, taking us almost up to the calendar itself.

PREFACE

The Pai Chung Ching is the fortune-teller's vital memory book. It contains, for those wishing to know how to calculate their birthday according to the lunar and solar calendars, a comparison of these calendars. For anyone in business who needs to work out both sets of dates, the Pai Chung Ching is essential. According to the stories of its history, it used to be based on the Peking longitude and latitude of east 116° 25'. It used the Peking longitude of 116° 25' as its basis. The Nanking observatory gives its east longitude as 120°. Everyone now follows the Nanking rules. After all, why use differing calculating points? So we now use the 120° as a standard point. Thus, since 1905, Yi Szu year at the New Year start, this has been used as the base. It can be used until the year 2000. The total of years covered is ninety-six, so for ordinary use it is fine.

The Pai Chung Ching is especially useful for fortune-tellers who need to work out quickly the eight characters of a person's year, month, day and 'hour' of birth but who do not have with them one of the books which lists every single day of every year over the last 100 years and for the next twenty to thirty years. Using the details in this set of tables, a competent fortune-teller will be able, with the minimum of difficulty, to work out your eight characters. It should be pointed out, however, that if you were born before 1904 you are out of luck. The chart starts then and goes up to, as the preface says, the year 2000. (Charts for 1985–92 are shown on pp. 182–3.)

乙丑年 一九八五

正月小	庚寅	子 戌	十四子驚蟄	二月二十
二月大	己未	巳 卯	初一子春分 十六寅清明	三月廿一
三月大	己丑	亥 酉	初一午谷雨 十六亥立夏	四月二十
四月小	己未	巳 卯	初二巳小滿 十八丑芒種	五月二十
五月大	戊子	戌 申	初四戌夏至 二十午小暑	六月十八
六月小	戊午	辰 寅	初六卯大暑 廿一亥立秋	七月十八
七月大	丁亥	酉 未	初八午處暑 廿四丑白露	八月十六
八月小	丁巳	卯 丑	初九巳秋分 廿四申寒露	九月十五
九月小	丙戌	申 午	初十戌霜降 廿五戌立冬	十月十四
十月大	乙卯	丑 亥	十一申小雪 廿六午大雪	十一月十二
十一月小	乙酉	未 巳	十一卯冬至 廿五子小寒	十二月十二
十二月大	甲寅	子 戌	十一申大寒 廿六午立春	一九八六 二月十日

丙寅年 一九八六

正月小	甲申	午 辰	十一卯雨水 廿六卯驚蟄	二月九日
二月大	癸丑	亥 酉	十二卯春分 廿七酉清明	三月十日
三月大	癸未	巳 卯	十二酉谷雨 廿八寅立夏	四月九日
四月小	癸丑	亥 酉	十三申小滿 廿九辰芒種	五月九日
五月大	壬午	辰 寅	十六子夏至	六月七日
六月大	壬子	戌 申	初一酉小暑 十七午大暑	七月七日
七月小	壬午	辰 寅	初三寅立秋 十八酉處暑	八月六日
八月大	辛亥	酉 未	初五辰白露 二十申秋分	九月四日
九月小	辛巳	卯 丑	初五亥寒露 廿一丑霜降	十月四日
十月大	庚戌	申 午	初七丑立冬 廿一亥小雪	十一月二日
十一月小	庚辰	寅 子	初六酉大雪 廿一午冬至	十二月二日
十二月小	己酉	未 巳	初七卯小寒 廿一亥大寒	十二月卅一

丁卯年 一九八七

正月大	戊寅	子 戌	初七申立春 廿二午雨水	一月廿九
二月小	戊申	午 辰	初七巳驚蟄 廿二午春分	二月廿八
三月大	丁丑	亥 酉	初八申清明 廿三子谷雨	三月廿九
四月小	丁未	巳 卯	初九巳立夏 廿四亥小滿	四月廿八
五月大	丙子	戌 申	十一未芒種 廿七卯夏至	五月廿七
六月大	丙午	辰 寅	十二子小暑 廿八酉大暑	六月廿六
閏六月小	丙子	戌 申	十四巳立秋	七月廿六
七月大	乙巳	卯 丑	初一子處暑 十六午白露	八月廿四
八月大	乙亥	酉 未	初一亥秋分 十七寅寒露	九月廿三
九月小	乙巳	卯 丑	初二卯霜降 十七辰立冬	十月廿三
十月大	甲戌	申 午	初三寅小雪 十七子大雪	十一月廿一
十一月小	甲辰	寅 子	初一酉冬至 十七巳小寒	十二月廿一
十二月小	癸酉	未 巳	初三寅大寒 十七亥立春	一九八八 一月十九

戊辰年 一九八八

正月大	壬寅	子 戌	初三酉雨水 十八申驚蟄	二月十七
二月小	壬申	午 辰	初三酉春分 十八亥清明	三月十八
三月大	辛丑	亥 酉	初五寅谷雨 二十申立夏	四月十六
四月小	辛未	巳 卯	初六寅小滿 廿一戌芒種	五月十六
五月大	庚子	戌 申	初八午夏至 廿四卯小暑	六月十四
六月小	庚午	辰 寅	初九子大暑 廿五申立秋	七月十四
七月大	己亥	酉 未	十二卯處暑 廿七酉白露	八月十二
八月大	己巳	卯 丑	十三寅秋分 廿八巳寒露	九月十一
九月小	己亥	酉 未	十三午霜降 廿八午立冬	十月十一
十月大	戊辰	寅 子	十四巳小雪 廿九卯大雪	十一月九日
十一月大	戊戌	申 午	十三子冬至 廿八申小寒	十二月九日
十二月小	戊辰	寅 子	十三巳大寒 廿八寅立春	一九八九 一月八日

己巳年 一九八九

正月大丁酉（未巳）（十四子雨水　廿八亥驚蟄）（二月六日）
二月小丁卯（丑亥）（十三子春分　廿九寅清明）（三月八日）
三月小丙申（午辰）（十五巳穀雨）（四月六日）
四月大乙丑（亥酉）（初一亥立夏　十七巳小滿）（五月五日）
五月小乙未（巳卯）（初三丑芒種　十八酉夏至）（六月四日）
六月大甲子（戌申）（初五午小暑　廿一卯大暑）（七月三日）
七月小甲午（辰寅）（初六亥立秋　廿二午處暑）（八月二日）
八月大癸亥（酉未）（初八子白露　廿四巳秋分）（八月卅一）
九月小癸巳（卯丑）（初九申寒露　廿四酉霜降）（九月卅日）
十月大壬戌（申午）（初十酉立冬　廿五申小雪）（十月廿九）
十一月大壬辰（寅子）（初十午大雪　廿五卯冬至）（十一月廿八）
十二月大壬戌（申午）（初九亥小寒　廿四申大寒）（十二月廿八）

庚午年 一九九〇

正月小壬辰（寅子）（初九巳立春　廿四卯雨水）（一月廿七）
二月大辛酉（未巳）（初十寅驚蟄　廿五卯春分）（二月廿五）
三月小辛卯（丑亥）（初十巳清明　廿五申穀雨）（三月廿七）
四月小庚申（午辰）（十二寅立夏　廿七申小滿）（四月廿五）
五月大己丑（戌酉）（十四辰芒種　廿九子夏至）（五月廿四）
閏五月小己未（巳卯）（十五酉小暑）（六月廿三）
六月小戊子（戌申）（初二午大暑　十八寅立秋）（七月廿二）
七月大丁巳（卯丑）（初四酉處暑　廿日卯白露）（八月二十）
八月小丁亥（酉未）（初五申秋分　廿日亥寒露）（九月十九）
九月大丙辰（寅子）（初七子霜降　廿二子立冬）（十月十八）
十月大丙戌（申午）（初六亥小雪　廿一亥大雪）（十一月十七）
十一月大丙辰（寅子）（初六午冬至　廿一酉小寒）（十二月十七）
十二月大丙辰（申午）（初五亥大寒　二十申立春）（一九九一年一月十六）

辛未年 一九九一

正月小丙辰（寅子）（初五午雨水　廿日巳驚蟄）（二月十五）
二月大乙酉（未巳）（初六午春分　廿一申清明）（三月十六）
三月小乙卯（丑亥）（初六亥穀雨　廿二辰立夏）（四月十五）
四月小甲申（午辰）（初八亥小滿　廿四未芒種）（五月十四）
五月大癸丑（亥酉）（十一卯夏至　廿六子小暑）（六月十二）
六月小癸未（巳卯）（十二申大暑　廿八巳立秋）（七月十二）
七月小壬子（戌申）（十四子處暑）（八月十日）
八月大辛巳（卯丑）（初一午白露　十六亥秋分）（九月八日）
九月小辛亥（酉未）（初二寅寒露　十七卯霜降）（十月八日）
十月大庚辰（寅子）（初三卯立冬　十七寅小雪）（十一月六日）
十一月大庚戌（申午）（初二子大雪　十七申冬至）（十二月六日）
十二月大庚辰（寅子）（初二巳小寒　十七寅大寒）（一九九二年一月五日）

壬申年 一九九二

正月小庚戌（申午）（初一亥立春　十六酉雨水）（二月四日）
二月大己卯（丑亥）（初二申驚蟄　十七申春分）（三月四日）
三月大己酉（未巳）（初二亥清明　十八寅穀雨）（四月三日）
四月小己卯（丑亥）（初三未立夏　十九寅小滿）（五月三日）
五月小戊申（午辰）（初五戌芒種　廿一午夏至）（六月一日）
六月大丁丑（亥酉）（初八卯小暑　廿三亥大暑）（六月卅日）
七月小丁未（巳卯）（初九申立秋　廿五卯處暑）（七月卅日）
八月小丙子（戌申）（十一酉白露　廿七丑秋分）（八月廿八）
九月大乙巳（卯丑）（十三巳寒露　廿八午霜降）（九月廿六）
十月小乙亥（酉未）（十三午立冬　廿八巳小雪）（十月廿六）
十一月大甲辰（寅子）（十四寅大雪　廿八亥冬至）（十一月廿四）
十二月大甲戌（申午）（十三申小寒　廿八巳大寒）（十二月廿四）

甲子 日冲 戊午 壬午

甲子（日建金匱）乙丑（天乙日合）丙寅（喜神白虎）丁卯（玉堂日刑）

戊辰（天牢）己巳（元武）庚午（司命日破）辛未（天乙日害）

壬申（青龍路空）癸酉（天官路空）甲戌（天刑旬空）乙亥（旬空朱雀）

丙寅 日冲 庚申 壬申

戊子（天官福星）己丑（明堂）庚寅（日建天刑）辛卯（朱雀）

壬辰（金匱路空）癸巳（喜神路空）甲午（白虎）乙未（玉堂）

丙申（喜神日破）丁酉（天乙元武）戊戌（福星旬空）己亥（天乙旬空）

戊辰 日冲 壬戌 丙戌

壬子（路空天牢）癸丑（天乙路空）甲寅（司命不遇）乙卯（天官日害）

丙辰（日建日刑）丁巳（日祿明堂）戊午（天刑）己未（天乙朱雀）

庚申（福星金匱）辛酉（日合寶光）壬戌（路空日破）癸亥（玉堂路空）

庚午 日冲 甲子 丙子

丙子（金匱）丁丑（天乙日害）戊寅（日馬白虎）己卯（玉堂）

庚辰（天牢）辛巳（元武）壬午（天官路空）癸未（日合路空）

甲申（日祿青龍）乙酉（明堂）丙戌（喜神旬空）丁亥（旬空朱雀）

壬申 日冲 丙寅 庚寅

庚子（青龍）辛丑（天官明堂）壬寅（日馬日破）癸卯（天乙路空）

甲辰（福星金匱）乙巳（天乙日合）丙午（喜神白虎）丁未（天官玉堂）

戊申（日建不遇）己酉（元武）庚戌（司命旬空）辛亥（日馬旬空）

乙丑 日冲 己未 癸未

丙子（天乙天刑）丁丑（日建朱雀）戊寅（金匱）己卯（日祿寶光）

庚辰（白虎）辛巳（玉堂不遇）壬午（天牢日害）癸未（路空日破）

甲申（天乙天官）乙酉（勾陳）丙戌（喜神旬空）丁亥（福星旬空）

丁卯 日冲 辛酉 癸酉

庚子（司命）辛丑（勾陳）壬寅（青龍路空）癸卯（日建路空）

甲辰（天刑日害）乙巳（日馬朱雀）丙午（喜神日祿）丁未（寶光）

戊申（白虎）己酉（天乙日破）庚戌（日合旬空）辛亥（天乙旬空）

己巳 日冲 癸亥 丁亥

甲子（天乙白虎）乙丑（玉堂不遇）丙寅（天官天牢）丁卯（元武）

戊辰（司命）己巳（日建勾陳）庚午（日祿青龍）辛未（福星明堂）

壬申（日合路空）癸酉（路空朱雀）甲戌（金匱旬空）乙亥（日馬日破）

辛未 日冲 乙丑 丁丑

戊子（日害天刑）己丑（日破朱雀）庚寅（天乙金匱）辛卯（寶光）

壬辰（路空白虎）癸巳（天官路空）甲午（日合天牢）乙未（日建元武）

丙申（喜神司命）丁酉（日祿不遇）戊戌（青龍旬空）己亥（明堂旬空）

癸酉 日冲 丁卯 辛卯

壬子（日祿路空）癸丑（路空勾陳）甲寅（青龍）乙卯（福星日破）

丙辰（日合天刑）丁巳（天乙朱雀）戊午（金匱）己未（寶光不遇）

庚申（白虎）辛酉（日建日刑）壬戌（天官旬空）癸亥（日馬旬空）

Section 45

THE SIXTY-DAY CYCLE OF HEAVENLY STEMS AND EARTHLY BRANCHES WITH THE GOOD-LUCK AND BAD-LUCK STARS

After the charms (Section 44, see p. 88) comes the last table before the calendar proper (see opposite). This lists the sixty-day cycle of the Heavenly and Earthly characters with their good and evil stars, and the 'hours' of each day in the cycle with their auspicious and inauspicious signs. As with the sixty-year cycle (see Introduction, pp. 31–2), the cycle starts with Chia Tzu (reading from top right down).

This brings us to the calendar itself and, with the tables outlined above, it is now capable of use and interpretation.

Section 46

THE CALENDAR

To try to give a flavour of both the calendar and its use we have taken a few examples which highlight the calendar – which is described below – and its meaning in some of the most common cases in which it is called upon to shape and influence the lives of its users.

The following are specific examples of how to use the last quarter of the book to predict or discover suitable days for special events. The major section, the calendar itself, gives details for every single day in the Chinese year. Each day has eight main subdivisions or blocks within it. Reading from the top (p. 186) they are as follows:

(a) The Western calendar date, including which day of the week it is.
(b) The beneficial stars which are on duty that day. These usually number between two and four stars, although New Year's Day has six (see p. 196).
(c) Details of the 'hours' of the day according to the Chinese system of two-hour blocks. The calendar gives details as

廿三	廿四	廿五	廿六	廿七	廿八	三月一日	二日	三日
星期六	星期日	星期一	星期二	星期三	星期四	星期五	星期六	星期日
相日寶光	歲支德日時德天貴	歲德合日	月德除神	歲支三合天德福生	天喜天醫	歲馬六合	歲德母倉	月德合日
子吉丑中寅中卯吉 辰吉巳吉午中未凶 申凶酉中戌吉亥凶	子凶丑吉寅吉卯中 辰中巳中午凶未凶 申凶酉吉戌中亥中	子吉丑凶寅吉卯吉 辰中巳凶午中未凶 申凶酉中戌吉亥吉	子吉丑吉寅凶卯中 辰凶巳吉午中未凶 申凶酉吉戌吉亥吉	子中丑吉寅中卯凶 辰中巳中午吉未凶 申凶酉吉戌中亥吉	子中丑吉寅凶卯吉 辰凶巳中午吉未凶 申凶酉中戌中亥中	子吉丑凶寅吉卯吉 辰中巳凶午吉未凶 申凶酉中戌中亥凶	子凶丑吉寅中卯中 辰中巳中午凶未凶 申凶酉吉戌凶亥中	子中丑吉寅吉卯吉 辰中巳吉午吉未凶 申凶酉凶戌中亥吉
忌 詞訟遠行	忌 開倉出財苫蓋除服	忌 栽種蒔揷	忌 作灶安牀	忌 理髮整甲田獵取魚	忌 買田置業	忌 嫁娶除服	忌 動土結網	忌 合醬造酒
初四癸巳水柳平	寅時福星貴人吉 初五甲午金星定 忌戊子壬子生人	初六乙未金張執	初七丙申火翼破	午時日祿喜神吉 初八丁酉火軫危 忌辛卯癸卯生人	初九戊戌木角成	初十己亥木亢收	十一庚子土氐開	十二辛丑土房閉
宜 平治道塗修飾垣牆	宜 祭祀祈福入學出行會友訂婚納采嫁娶移徙修造動土上樑開市交易作灶醞釀	宜 拆卸掃舍	宜 求醫治病破屋壞垣	宜 祭祀祈福入學出行嫁娶裁衣納采移徙修造動土上樑安牀作灶開市納畜安葬	宜 開市補垣塞穴	宜 祭祀祈福會友開倉捕捉醞釀栽種牧養	宜 祭祀入學出行嫁娶裁衣安牀開市交易	宜 祭祀結網搭廁斷蟻
	候雁北			陽將	草木萌動	劫煞	地囊	水痕歸忌
五虛天瘟 重日月害	月忌重喪 復日死氣	暗金伏斷 歲破小耗	月破上兀 長星水痕	五離天吏 致死元武	犬口地火	重日債不	班煞復喪	土符火星
神丫	火丫	山白	鬼白	人人	水人	州人	白	白
占房床	占門碓	碓磨廁	廚灶爐	門倉庫	房床栖	占門床	占碓磨	廚灶廁

to which 'hour' is fortunate, which average and which inauspicious.

(d) Activities which should not be undertaken on this day. The title in Chinese means 'Avoid'.

(e) The Chinese date. This includes the day of the month, the Heavenly Stem and the Earthly Branch, the element, the title of the particular constellation for the day and the descriptive term for the day. Certain special or auspicious days have text running down both sides of this block with details of the most auspicious 'hour' and a warning that this day is inauspicious for people born under certain Heavenly/Earthly signs.

(f) Activities which can be carried out on this day. The Chinese word means 'Right' or 'Suitable'.

(g) In nearly all cases there is a seventh division giving details of evil or inauspicious stars. On certain very auspicious days the emphasis on the evil stars is lessened.

(h) The final category consists of two parts. The first is a title which gives a characteristic to the day constructed from (usually) two characters which must be seen as parallel but not linked. Below this are brief details of building activities which should not be undertaken.

To understand the days, it is necessary to know the two horoscope characters for the day you were born on. These are then used in conjunction with 'Respected Master T'ung's Method of Calculating Days' (Section 42) and the fifth block of the calendar (e). The Earthly Branch and the descriptive term are taken together. On good days the descriptive term is printed in red; on not so good days, in black. It is then necessary to turn to Respected Master T'ung's chart and look up the month you are dealing with. Then find the descriptive term combined with the Earthly Branch and below this will be a detailed analysis of your fortune for the day. This, combined with the information provided in the calendar, gives the answer.

Finally, the calendar sometimes carries an inset at the top of the sixth block (f). This will be either information about one of the Twenty-Four Joints and Breaths of the year (see pp. 64–6), details of a major festival such as Ch'ing Ming (p. 188, in the second column from the right), or details of an eclipse of the sun or moon. In all three cases, the calendar gives appropriate instructions about the time when such events start – or simply states in the case of an eclipse, 'Cannot be seen from Hong Kong.'

◁ *First month, days 4–12 (23 February–3 March)*

四日	五日	六日	七日	八日	九日	十日	十一
星期四	星期五	星期六	星期日	星期一	星期二	星期三	星期四
歲支 三合	天馬 不將	歲德 合日	三合 不將 天喜 天醫	天月 德合 四相 不將	時陽 生氣 天赦 陽德	歲祿 麒麟	歲德 月恩
子吉丑吉寅吉卯凶 辰吉巳吉午中未凶 申吉酉凶戌中亥中	子中丑吉寅吉卯吉 辰凶巳吉午凶未凶 申中酉中戌凶亥中	子吉丑吉寅吉卯吉 辰中巳凶午中未凶 申中酉中戌凶亥中	子吉丑吉寅中卯中 辰凶巳吉午凶未凶 申中酉吉戌凶亥吉	子吉丑中寅中卯凶 辰中巳吉午吉未凶 申中酉吉戌凶亥吉	子中丑吉寅凶卯吉 辰吉巳吉午吉未凶 申凶酉中戌凶亥中	子吉丑凶寅吉卯吉 辰中巳中午吉未凶 申中酉凶戌凶亥凶	子凶丑吉寅吉卯中 辰吉巳吉午吉未凶 申中酉中戌凶亥吉
忌 詞訟 作灶	忌 開倉 出財	忌 栽種 嫁娶	忌 修厨 作灶 問卜 取魚	忌 理髮 整甲 裁衣 合帳	忌 買田 置業 祭祀 祈福	忌 穿井 除服	忌 結網 行喪
十五癸酉金斗破	十六甲戌火牛破	十七乙亥火女危	酉時天乙貴人吉 十八丙子水虛成 忌庚午戊午生人	酉時天乙貴人吉 十九丁丑水危收 忌辛未己未生人	卯時天官貴人吉 二十戊寅土室開 忌壬申甲申生人	廿一己卯土壁閉	廿二庚辰金奎建
宜求醫治病破屋壞垣	清明 寅正四 時十四分 宜破屋	宜安牀結網沐浴納畜	宜 祭祀祈福入學會友 出行嫁娶納采醫病 開市交易修造動土 上樑修倉成服安葬	宜 會友出行嫁娶納采 移徙修造動土豎柱 上樑開倉出財修置 產室栽種牧養安葬	宜 入學會友出行訂婚 納采嫁娶開市移徙 修造動土上樑開渠 作灶安門修倉納畜	宜 嫁娶開市安牀 入倉補塞伐木	宜祭祀會友穿井
火星災煞 大耗地火	桐始華 月破 四擊	重日水痕 遊禍天賊	班煞 歸忌 上兀 暗金 伏斷	五虛 債不 寡宿 元武 短星	虎口 復日 血忌 復喪 陰將	田鼠化爲鴽 重喪 陽將	無祿月刑 土府三喪
州了	天了	林了	地白	神白	火白	山人	鬼人
房床門	門碓栖	碓磨床	廚灶碓	倉庫廁	房床爐	占大門	碓磨栖

At the start of each month there is a special block of information (see p. 192, starting at top right):

1. The Western calendar month(s).
2. The list of festivals of sages and deities for the month (mostly Buddhist and not including most major festivals; see pp. 194–9).
3. The Chinese month number and whether it is a big month (thirty days) or a small month (twenty-nine days).
4. Details of the basic geophysical phenomena for the month – e.g. earthquakes, floods, etc. – plus details of the colour of the month and its influence.
5. The final block covers the names of the good or fortune stars of the month, side by side with the bad or evil stars.

The following are examples of how the calendar and Respected Master T'ung's chart are used to provide answers. The details are based upon the calendar for the year of the Ox in the Heavenly Stem Yi Earthly Branch Ch'ou – 1985–86.

Example 1

I wish to get married in the 8th month on the 15th day. Is this a good day? My birth sign for the day is Chia Ch'en.

Turning first to the 15th day of the 8th month, the following is discovered:

(a) It is Sunday, 29 September, in the Western calendar.
(b) There are two lucky stars on duty.
(c) Of the twelve 'hours', four are fortunate, four average and four evil. This is not a good combination.
(d) It is a bad day for making soy sauce and for tilling the soil.
(e) The date is the 15th. It is under the element of Earth and the descriptive term is 'Open'. The Earthly Stem is Wei.
(f) It is Mid-Autumn Festival day (see p. 198). It is good for clearing graves and respecting ancestors. Nothing else. It is under the sign of 'Destroyer Day'. This means that nothing should be started on this day for it will fail.
(g) There are four evil stars listed – another bad sign.
(h) The characteristic of the day is Human and you should not build or renovate the threshing machine or toilet.

This is such an inauspicious day that the fortune-teller will not bother to check Respected Master T'ung's chart. The mere presence of the characters for 'Destroyer Day' puts an end to any plans for that day.

The fortune-teller will now search for an auspicious-looking day nearby. The 12th of the 8th month seems promising. The

◁ *Second month, days 15–22 (4–11 April), showing Ch'ing Ming* first task is to check the main features of the 12th but not in great detail. At this stage, the fortune-teller will look to see if, under the auspicious or proper activities for the day, the sign for weddings appears. It does, and in fact heads the list. There are three good-fortune stars on duty, and although the 'hours' are four fortunate, four average and four evil, the descriptive character is in red. So the day is not inauspicious, although it is only average. The Heavenly Stem is Wu and the Earthly Branch Ch'en.

Taking the descriptive character for 'Danger' and the Earthly sign Ch'en, he turns to Respected Master T'ung's chart. Looking under month 8 for the character representing 'Danger' and the Earthly Branch Ch'en, it is found that:

Ping Ch'en is a day good for digging, building, opening a new business, travelling, starting a new job, working and getting married. But Hsin Ch'en and Keng Ch'en and Chia Ch'en are extremely inauspicious.

There is nothing specific about Wu Ch'en. Therefore another day must be chosen. This time the 9th day of the 8th month; this is the day when autumn starts.

(a) It is Monday, 23 September.
(b) There are four lucky stars on duty.
(c) Of the twelve 'hours' of the day, five are fortunate, four are average and only three are inauspicious.
(d) It is not a good day for planning, planting seedlings, visiting a tailor or honouring the dead.
(e) The Chinese date has a border of red characters. These tell that

3–5 p.m. is the most auspicious 'hour' when good fortune abounds and a nobleman will come. But for those born on Chi Wei or Kuei Wei it is not a good day.

The descriptive character (printed in red because it is an auspicious day) is 'Steady'. The Earthly Branch is Ch'ou and the Heavenly Stem Yi.

From Respected Master Tung's chart we find the following for this month:

Hsin Ch'ou, Kuei Ch'ou, Yi Ch'ou or Ting Ch'ou have only average fortune. Chi Ch'ou is very inauspicious. Yi Ch'ou and Szu Ch'ou are days for marriage or engagement.

Thus, although certain Ch'ou-sign days are inauspicious, others are perfectly satisfactory. Turning back with confidence to the 9th day of the 8th month, we find the remaining details are as follows:

(f) It is the Beginning of Autumn – one of the Twenty-Four Joints and Breaths of the year (see pp. 64–6). Autumn starts in the Szu 'hour' (9–11 a.m.) at 10.08 a.m.

It is a good day to go on a journey, hold a meeting, get married, stock up, dig the earth, raise a beam (this refers to the main support beam of a new house upon which the wellbeing of the house, physically and spiritually, depends), open a new business and bury the dead. There is an inset which says there will be no more thunder now.

(g) The names of the four inauspicious stars.

(h) The signs are Forest/Human. It is best not to work on the threshing machine, grinding stone or toilet.

Thus this is a good day for the inquirer to marry on between 3 and 5 p.m.

Example 2

I wish to open a new shop on the 2nd day of the 3rd month. My day sign is Ting Yin.

The calendar details for the 2nd day of the 3rd month are as follows:

(a) It is Sunday, 21 April.

(b) There are four auspicious stars on duty.

(c) Five of the 'hours' are good, three average and four evil.

(d) It is best to avoid making fishing nets, constructing a kang (stove-cum-bed), honouring the ancestors and praying to the gods.

(e) The best 'hour' is from 11 a.m. to 1 p.m. when Heaven's favour shines and a nobleman comes. It is not a good day for people whose day sign is Chia Shen or Hsin Shen. The Heavenly Stem is Keng. The Earthly Branch is Yin. It comes under the element Wood. The descriptive character (in red – auspicious) means 'Open'.

(f) It is a proper day for study, travel, meeting a friend, getting engaged, buying livestock, moving, visiting the doctor, making repairs and building, tilling the soil, raising a beam, opening a business, signing a contract, buying property, preparing a bed (this usually means a new bed. It was prepared or 'opened' by inviting a couple with many children to come and sleep in it. This should assist the new couple whose bed it was to have children), opening a gutter, visiting the tailor.

陽曆十一月十二月 1

列聖神誕日期 2

初一東岳旦初二周將軍旦初三二茅眞君旦初五達摩旦初六天官諸司旦初十花公花婆旦十五下元旦瘟神劉使者旦溫元帥旦十六巫山娘娘旦二十虛靖天師旦廿七五岳旦紫微旦三十周將軍旦

3 律中應鐘

上生蕤賓

農曆十月大建

丁亥尾宿

辟卦行坤

4 立冬三奇 乙奇兌 丙奇乾 丁奇中

黑赤白 紫黃白 綠碧白

5 吉神

天德乙 月德甲 月合己 月恩乙

月空庚 天道東 天赦乾 帝尊（乾巽）

眞祿震 眞馬中 陽貴艮 陰貴乾

天喜未 天醫未 玉堂丑 金匱戌

造葬利 亥壬子癸 丑艮丙午 丁坤乾山

凶星

天官中 地官坤 大建中 小建離

頭火乾 月煞戌 月破巳 五黃中

八座申 九良（門寺） 兌煞離 六甲（房床）

猪胎（籬壁） 牛胎（門廁） 羊胎（灶溝） 馬胎井

修方宜壬子癸山 天（中宮）不利

太陽本月十一日申時入寅宮

十神扃門光星

逐日胎神占處

十一月十二	十三	十四	十五	十六
星期二	星期三	星期四	星期五	星期六
歲德合日	解神陽德司命	驛馬天后	歲支德日十靈	月德合日
子中丑中寅吉卯吉 辰中巳凶午中未凶 申吉酉凶戌吉亥吉	子中丑中寅中卯中 辰凶巳凶午中未凶 申吉酉吉戌凶亥吉	子中丑吉寅中卯凶 辰中巳凶午吉未凶 申中酉吉戌吉亥凶	子凶丑中寅凶卯吉 辰中巳凶午中未凶 申吉酉吉戌中亥中	子中丑凶寅吉卯吉 辰中巳凶午吉未凶 申吉酉中戌中亥凶
忌 栽種穿井	忌 修廚作灶動土	忌 理髮遠行	忌 買田置產搭廁	忌 詞訟作灶
初一乙卯水尾定	初二丙辰土箕執	初三丁巳土斗破	初四戊午火牛危	初五己未火女成
日全食 香港地區不見 地始凍	宜 訂婚嫁娶裁衣合帳求醫治病沐浴理髮整甲伐木捕捉田獵	宜 求醫治病破屋壞垣	宜 祭祀出行會友開市拆卸修造動土上樑安門作灶修墳安葬	宜 拆卸掃舍
長星水痕	土符 天賊陰將復喪	月破重日債不四廢	上兀 陰將四不祥致死	歲破月忌反支火星
人白	水白	州白	了	了
碓磨門	廚灶栖	倉庫床	房床碓	占門廁

(g) Caution. There are two bad stars; do not show off or kill any fowl.
(h) Fire/White. It is best to avoid working on the threshing machine, grinding stone and stove.

Turning to Respected Master T'ung's chart, the following can be seen from the entry under month 3, character 'Open', Earthly Branch Yin:

Hsin Yin is a fortunate day. Jen Yin has two lucky stars blessing it. Any other sign with Yin is only a second-best day.

Thus, although this day is not particularly inauspicious, neither is it particularly auspicious. The inquirer might look for a better day using the methods outlined above, or he might check the suitability by another method (see, for example, Section 29).

Example 3

Our son was born on the 29th day of the 8th month. Thirty days after birth there is the full-month feast to celebrate his birth and survival and to name him. We wish to know what that day will be like. Because both the 8th and 9th months are small months (only twenty-nine days), the full-month feast will fall on the 1st day of the 10th month. The sign for his birthday is Yi Yu.

The reading of the calendar for the 1st day of the 10th month is as follows:

(a) It is Tuesday, 12 November.
(b) There are two lucky stars on duty.
(c) Five of the 'hours' are good, four average and three bad.
(d) It is not a good day for planning or making a well.
(e) The Heavenly Stem is Yi. The Earthly Branch is Mao. It comes under the element Water and its descriptive character is 'Steady'.
(f) There is an eclipse of the sun today, but no times are given, simply the information that it cannot be seen from Hong Kong.
In an inset there is the information that the earth is now starting to turn cold – winter is setting in.
(g) There are two inauspicious stars.
(h) Human/White. Avoid working on the ground, the threshing machine and the door.

Tenth month, days 1–5 (12–16 November)

Turning to Respected Master T'ung's chart, the following is recorded under the 10th month for character 'Steady', Earthly Branch Mao:

> *Yi Mao has the star Heavenly Virtue. Hsin Mao and Chi Mao are good for digging, building foundations, raising a beam, marriage, for family, for travel, for opening a business and so on. There is a good star shining.*

Thus this is a good day.

FESTIVALS IN THE CALENDAR

The calendar section of the Almanac carries details of all the major and minor festivals of the Chinese year. The calendar deals with them in two separate ways. At the start of each month it lists all the Buddhist and Taoist deities or festivals for that month. Some of these are very obscure and rarely observed. Others, such as the birthday of Kuan Yin or of Kuan Ti, are occasions of major festivals in certain areas or for certain groups. Similarly, English diaries often carry details of religious events which have true significance for only a few, e.g. Ember Days or Ascension Day. A full list with explanatory details of these minor festivals will be found below.

The major festivals are not, with a couple of exceptions, mentioned in the block of dates at the start of each month. They are featured with the vivid use of red printing and enlarged space on the actual day they occur. The amount of extra detail such a day has to carry often means that that day's column grows to double or even treble the ordinary size. In most cases the calendar assumes that the reason for the festival is known, as well as the appropriate activities. It contents itself with giving details of when and how these activities should take place. Hence, in the subsection below, we have provided basic background details to the festivals.

As we saw in the introduction to the calendar, the majority of festivals, major and minor, are tied into the lunar calendar, thus changing each year. Only two, Ch'ing Ming and the Winter Festival, are tied to the solar year, thus occuring on the same Western date each year.

MAJOR FESTIVALS

Month 1 Day 1 – New Year

The preparations for New Year start two weeks beforehand when the Kitchen God and the God of Wealth are sent up to Heaven to report on the family (see Minor Festivals, Twelfth

Moon, Day 24). On New Year's Eve the family will gather together to eat and to paste up the new good-luck charms and Door Gods ready for the New Year. The children of the family are given small red packets with money inside. This 'lucky money' is also given to children of friends over the fifteen days of the New Year celebration.

New Year's Day is a time for special food and for *not* doing or using certain things. For instance, no one sweeps the house on this day in case they brush away the good fortune. Nor are knives or scissors, or indeed anything sharp, used in case the good luck is cut. In most families, the food on New Year's Day itself is vegetarian out of respect for the animal world, from one of whose number the name of the year comes. The food is carefully chosen using Chinese puns in order to have names which mean good luck, fortune, plenty of money, etc. An example of this is the sticky rice ball with sesame seeds, the name of which in Cantonese puns with 'gold'.

At the turn of the year the new Kitchen and Wealth Gods are instated in their shrines and, in traditional families, incense is offered to Heaven, Earth and the ancestors. Firecrackers are then exploded to scare away the old and the demonic and the doors are thrown open. In many places, not least in the West, the next few days will see Lion, Unicorn and Dragon dances through the streets. Those wishing to be sure of good fortune in their business will hang out a lettuce and red packets of money for the Lion or the Unicorn to 'eat'. The Lion is teased through the streets by a comic figure who is in fact supposed to be Mi Lo Fo, the Future Buddha. When he comes to reign all will be well (he is usually shown with a large belly) and life will be extended. Those families who can afford to buy special potted bushes. If these bloom on New Year's Day, especially good fortune will be theirs.

Traditionally New Year went on for fifteen days until the Feast of the Night of the First Full Moon or Lantern Festival as it is sometimes called. Nowadays three to seven days is the norm, although visiting – a vital part of New Year – continues throughout. The 7th day is called Yan Yat – Everyone's Birthday. On this day everyone is one year older.

Month 1 Day 15 – Feast of the Night of the First Full Moon or Lantern Festival

This marks the end of New Year. Lanterns are strung out (this occurs more in north China than in the south). This is a day for the ancestors when offerings are made and official notification is given to the ancestors of any new sons born during the previous year.

陽曆二月三月

列聖神誕日期

初一天臘之辰初二
車公旦初三孫眞人
旦初四箸筒姑娘旦
初八穀王旦初九玉
皇旦初十土神旦十
三溫許二公旦十五
上元天官旦十六綏
靖伯旦十九門官土
地旦二十招財童子
旦廿六庇佑財神旦

律中太簇
下生南呂
農曆正月小建
戊寅星宿
辟卦行泰

立春三奇
乙奇兌　丙奇艮　丁奇離

黑赤白　紫黃白　綠碧白

吉神

天德丁　月德丙　月合辛　月恩丙
月空壬　天道南　天赦中　帝尊兌
眞祿乾　眞馬中　陽貴坤　陰貴乾
天喜戌　天醫戌　玉堂未　金匱辰
造葬利　艮丙午丁　坤庚酉辛　戌乾山
太陽甲子年十二月三十日丑時入亥宮

凶星

天官坤　地官艮　大建中　小建離
頭火震　月煞丑　月破申　五黃中
八座亥　九艮東北　兌煞離　六甲房床
猪胎身稠　牛胎磨堂　羊胎樓　馬胎門
修方宜辛山　中宮不利
十神扁門光星
逐日胎神占處

一九八五年二月二十
星期三

歲德　王日　要安　天倉　十靈　不將

子凶　丑吉　寅吉　卯吉
辰吉　巳中　午中　未凶
申凶　酉中　戌凶　亥中

宜
結網　動土　祭祀　祈福　除靈　成服

世界行陽曆

初一庚寅木參建

民間紀夏時

春節

貴神東北財神正東炷香宜用丑時
天乙貴人上吉寅卯時亦吉出行宜
丑寅卯辰巳時向東北方迎貴神正
東迎財神大吉申時日破未時歲破
子戌時五不遇酉午未時截路空亡
不宜出行五鬼正西鶴神正北勿向

廿一
星期四

歲祿　不將　月德　合日

子中　丑中　寅吉　卯吉
辰中　巳吉　午吉　未凶
申凶　酉凶　戌吉　亥中

忌
合醬　造酒　穿井　開池

寅時天乙貴人吉

初二辛卯木井除

忌乙酉己酉生人

宜
祭祀祈福求嗣會友
出行納采嫁娶移徙
醫病掃舍修造動土
上樑栽種納畜安葬

債不
咸池　朱雀　大時　大敗

林白

廚灶門

廿二
星期五

天德　合日

子中　丑吉　寅吉　卯吉
辰中　巳吉　午中　未凶
申凶　酉吉　戌凶　亥吉

忌
新船　進水

初三壬辰水鬼滿

宜
祭祀出行會友嫁娶
開市動土上樑安葬

三喪
火星　水痕

地丁

倉庫栖

On either side of the date details for New Year are red letters which read (on the right-hand side): 'The world uses the solar Western calendar' and (on the left-hand side): 'The Chinese citizen and farmers use the traditional timing.'

The correct title for New Year is Spring Festival. Details below this are:

The noble star is on the northeast side. The God of Wealth is in the centre of the east. If you wish to worship, burn joss sticks at the 'hour' of Ch'ou [1–3 a.m.]. If you make offerings at this time then a special Tien Yi [lucky star] nobleman will bring good fortune to you. If you offer during the time of Yin [3–5 a.m.] or Mao [5–7 a.m.], then this will also bring you good luck. If you want to travel, then go during Ch'ou [1–3 a.m.], Yin [3–5 a.m.], Mao [5–7 a.m.], Ch'en [7–9 a.m.] or Szu [9–11 a.m.] period and face towards the northeast. There a noble star will shine on you. If you go to the east you will approach the God of Wealth and have very great fortune. Shen [3–5 p.m.] is a 'broken day' [bad luck] and Wei [1–3 p.m.] is a 'broken age' [bad luck]. During Tzu [11–1 a.m.] and Hsu [7–9 p.m.] times, the five auspicious aspects cannot meet and evil will abound. During Wu [11–1 p.m.] and Wei [1–3 p.m.] the road is cut off [bad luck] and all is empty and lost. This is not a good time to travel. There are five ghosts in the west and the bad star in the centre of the north. Do not turn to face them.

Month 2 Day 16 (in 1985) – Ch'ing Ming

Ch'ing Ming means 'Clear and bright' and is in fact one of the Twenty-Four Joints and Breaths of the year. It heralds the changing weather which comes just after the start of spring. This is the major festival of the dead when families go out, sometimes for three consecutive days, to honour the dead. This is done by clearing weeds from the graves, cleaning up the tombs themselves and making offerings. These are of two main kinds. First, the offering of paper goods such as model clothes, cars, etc., as well as Bank of Hell notes; these are burned and it is believed they then go to the credit of the dead on the other side. Secondly, food is offered. Traditional amongst this is a whole roasted pig and various cakes.

As this is one of the Joints and Breaths, the only detail given for this day other than the special name is the exact time of the start of Ch'ing Ming.

Ch'ing Ming. Starts in Yin period [3–5 a.m.] at 4.14 a.m.

◁ *First month, days 1–3 (20–22 February), showing New Year*

Month 5 Day 5 – Dragon Boat Festival

The 5th day of the 5th month is a very dangerous day. This is the Dragon month, when disease is most rampant and threatening. Hence the Dragon Boat Festival to help dispel and ward off evil, as well as marking the start of summer.

The story behind the Dragon Boat is that there was once a corrupt and greedy Emperor who taxed his people until they could hardly survive. One honest official, Ch'u Yuen, protested to the Emperor, but his protest was mocked and scorned. In a last desperate attempt to draw the Emperor's attention to the suffering he was causing, Ch'u Yuen threw himself into a lake and drowned. Local fishermen rushed in boats to save him, but without avail. To ward off the dragons and evil spirits they threw dumplings of rice into the water while they pulled Ch'u Yuen's body out.

Each year Dragon Boat races take place to commemorate this event and dumplings of sticky rice tied in bamboo leaves are eaten. Other than the festival title, the calendar gives no more details apart from surrounding the date with borders inscribed:

Szu 'hour' [9–11 a.m.] is when the Heaven-sent nobleman will bring good fortune. It is not a good day for people born under Ping Hsu or Chia Hsu.

Month 7 Day 7 – The Seventh Evening

See Minor Festivals for the same day (p. 208).

Month 8 Day 15 – Mid-Autumn Festival

A day of offerings to the Moon Goddess, as detailed in the calendar itself. The moon is at its brightest on this day and in south China this is the night for lanterns. Vastly diverse in shape and colour, they are paraded in honour of the moon and its goddess, about whom many stories abound. People also try to see the rabbit on the moon pounding the elixir of eternity. The rabbit was immortalized in the moon by the Buddha, according to legend. One day the Buddha visited a forest. All the animals and birds brought him food they had collected. But the poor rabbit had nothing to bring, so he gave himself. Rushing into the clearing, he threw himself upon the fire. Buddha pulled him out, but was too late to save him. So he was immortalized and given the moon as his home. The lanterns are often rabbit-shaped.

Month 9 Day 9 – Chung Yang or Climbing the Heights

This is another day, to set alongside Ch'ing Ming, for visiting the graves of the ancestors. As this usually involves going to hills or mountains, the requirement of 'Climbing the Heights' is fulfilled. Picnics are held on high points in memory of a scholar who was warned by a fortune-teller that on this particular day, the 9th of the 9th, a terrible disaster would befall his town. He quickly told everyone to flee to the hills with their families and animals. Many scorned him and few climbed up the hills. But when they returned that night all who had stayed behind were dead from an unknown disease. Two requirements for the picnic are chrysanthemum wine, which the scholar took with him, and a special cake. The name of this cake is punned to give a double meaning, one of which is 'top'. Those who eat it on top of the heights hope for advancement at work.

The calendar carries red border inscriptions around the date:

The Yin 'hour' [3–5 p.m.] is when the spirit star blessed nobleman comes bringing good fortune. It is not a good day for those born under Wu Tzu or Jen Tzu.

This is one of the few festivals which is also mentioned in the block of festivals at the start of the month.

Month 11 Day 11 – Winter Festival

This is a major event standing alongside New Year in importance. It always comes on the winter solstice and thus, like Ch'ing Ming, it is one of the Twenty-Four Joints and Breaths of the year and never alters so far as the Western calendar is concerned. The festival is one vast feast at which the entire family gathers. It is a time to honour and respect the living ancestors as well as to enjoy good food. It is purely a domestic festival but is no less important for that. For Western readers, its significance as a family event and meal can be compared to Thanksgiving Day dinner or Christmas dinner.

Month 12 Day 26 – Li Ch'un

Li Ch'un is the start of spring and is also a solar festival, being the very first of the Twenty-Four Joints and Breaths of the year (see pp. 64–6). This is the official start of the year so far as astrology is concerned. It also marks the start of the farmer's year (see Section 1).

MINOR FESTIVALS

In the following section, the details in square brackets are not part of the translation but information provided for the reader. The list of festivals occurs as blocks of text at the start of each month. They do not include many of the best-known festivals. These are given on the specific day(s) upon which they fall (see 'Major Festivals' above). (Buddhists fast every 1st and 15th day of each month.)

SOME HOLY AND GODLY FESTIVALS AND BIRTHDAYS

First Moon

Day 1	*Offerings made to Heaven. [On the first day of the New Year the family makes offerings to all deities and ancestors, who are collectively titled 'Heaven'.]*
Day 2	*Birthday of Ch'e Kung. [A former general who was made an Immortal and is seen as a bringer of good luck, particularly wealth. A wheel is spun before him on this day to give a good spin to the New Year.]*
Day 3	*Birthday of Sun. [Worship is offered to a Taoist deity called Sun and offerings are also made to the sun itself.]*
Day 4	*The day for prayers to Chu T'ung, guardian of women.*
Day 8	*Birthday of the Cereal King [who grants long life].*
Day 9	*Birthday of the Jade Emperor. [The Jade Emperor is seen as the supreme god in Heaven. At times a rather vague figure, he is often called upon to decide matters, both on earth and in Heaven. The authority of the emperors came from the Jade Emperor.]*
Day 10	*Earth God Festival. [The Earth God represents Heaven's power and authority on earth. Small shrines can be found in homes, streets and at significant landmarks.]*
Day 13	*Birthday of Wen Hsu [God of Wealth and Fortune].*
Day 15	*Celebration of the Lantern Festival of Superior Principles. [New Year officially ends with the Lantern Festival. It is known as Superior Principles or Three-Principles Day for it commemorates the Three August Ones who taught humans the first principles of civilization; see Introduction, p. 15.]*
Day 16	*Festival of Sui Ching [a deity who assists farmers].*

Day 19 門官土地旦	*Celebration of the Door Gods and the Earth God. [This ensures protection and success in the coming year. The Door Gods are colourful posters depicting fierce-looking soldier deities. Legend traces them back to Emperor T'ai Tsung* (c. *650* CE). *When the Emperor was unable to sleep at night because of ghosts, two loyal soldiers volunteered to guard his door. This scared off the demons – until they found a third door. So another loyal soldier took up duty there. However, the Emperor was concerned for the soldiers and ordered paintings of them to be made. These replaced the real soldiers and were just as effective. The custom of Door Gods spread throughout the country.]*
Day 20	*Birthday of Shen Tai. [Shen Tai is the devoted follower of Kuan Yin, the goddess of mercy. He is worshipped as a dispenser of money.]*
Day 26	*Festival of Pi Yu [god of money].*

Second Moon

Day 1	*Festival of the Sun. [This is the day the sun visits the palace of the Jade Emperor to discuss the coming year.]* *Birthday of the Star God Ch'u-tien.*
Day 2	*Birthday of the local Earth God. [In every village and house there is a small, ground-level shrine to the Earth God.]* *Birthday of Mencius. [The Confucian philosopher who is most revered after K'ung Fu-tzu himself. Mencius lived from 371 to 289* BCE.*]*
Day 3	*Birthday of the god of literature – Wen-ch'ang. [Highly valued in Confucian and Buddhist thought because of the great importance attached to literature and literacy, Wen-ch'ang was a historical figure who lived either during the Chin (265–317* CE*), T'ang (618–906* CE*) or Sung (960–1126* CE*) dynasties. In all stories he is a man of outstanding intellectual achievements. He was made a god in 1314* CE.*]*
Day 6	*Birthday of the god of the Eastern Mountain.*
Day 8	*Birthday of the Ruler of the Third Court of Hell. [This, one of the Ten Hells, is presided over by Sung-ti Wang – King Sung-ti. This is the Hell for disobedient and unfilial sons, ministers and others.]*
Day 10	*Birthday of Earth Spirits. [Linked and sometimes identified with the Earth God, they are more often associated with agriculture.]*

Day 13	*Birthday of Hung Sheng. [Hung Sheng is a very popular god of fishermen and the sea. Legend tells of his being an official who was killed in foretelling the weather. On this day, fishing communities stage operas and hold great feasts.]*
Day 15	*Birthday of Lao Tzu. [The founder figure of Taoism, reputed to have lived* c. 550 BCE *and to have written the* T'ao-te Ching.*]* *Birthday of General Yo Shuai.*
Day 18	*Birthday of the Ruler of the Fourth Court of Hell. [Ruled by King Wu Kuan, the fourth Hell is reserved for cheats, frauds and people who let their animals disturb others.]*
Day 19 觀音旦	*Birthday of Kuan Yin. [The most popular and beloved of all Chinese deities. The goddess of Mercy, she was the daughter of a king who wished to marry her off. She, however, wished to be a Buddhist nun. After terrible trials she was killed on her father's orders. Descending to the Ten Courts of Hell, she transformed them by her merit into places of bliss. She was given life again in order to preserve Hell's role! In her new incarnation she saved her father's life. He was brought to Buddhism by this act. Kuan Yin is much revered by women and comes to those who are ill or in need. For instance, it is she who pulls Monkey out of his greatest difficulties on the journey to India. See also Sixth Moon, Day 19.]*
Day 20	*Birthday of Pu-hsien. [The title of the all-pervading Buddha or Bodhisattva. He sits with Manjushri Buddha on either side of the Buddha.]*
Day 25	*Birthday of the Ruler of the Whole Heavens. [Celebration of all in the Palace of Heaven.]*

Third Moon

Day 1	*Birthday of the Ruler of the Second Court of Hell. [King Ch'u Chiang. The second Hell contains a great frozen lake where the damned are tortured.]*
Day 3	*Birthday of Pak Tai. [Guardian of the north. There are many legends about Pak Tai, the best known of which is that the earth was being ravaged by a giant snake and tortoise. The gods sent Pak Tai to defeat them. A very popular deity in the south.]*
Day 4	*Birthday of the secretary to the Jade Emperor.*
Day 6	*Birthday of Ch'ang Lao. [This is a day for remembering the elderly.]*

Day 8	*Birthday of the Ruler of the Sixth Court of Hell. [King Pien Ch'eng deals with those who challenge or abuse Heaven, earth or the North Star.]*
Day 10	*Birthday of one of the gods of the Five Directions [east, west, north, south, centre].*
Day 12	*Birthday of Chung Yang, one of the Five-Ways Spirits. [The Five Ways refer to fates or destinies. Each destiny has an aweful spirit attached to it.]*
Day 15	*Birthday of the god of medicine.* *Birthday of General Chao [a god of wealth].*
Day 16	*Birthday of Ch'un T'i. [Known as the Queen of Heaven by Taoists and as Maritchi to Buddhists, she is shown with eight arms and is seen as a goddess of light.]*
Day 18	*Birthday of the god of the Central Mountain. [Believed to have been the General Wen P'ing, who died in the semi-mythological struggles at the end of the Yin dynasty,* c. *1030* BCE.*]*
Day 19	*Birthday of the Sun.*
Day 23 天 后 旦	*Birthday of the Empress of Heaven. [Also known as Queen or Mother of Heaven. T'ien Ha is a very popular deity. She is also revered as a goddess of the sea and great festivities lasting a number of days take place around the 23rd day. Reputedly born in the tenth century* CE*, she had a miraculous birth and her name was Lin Ma-tzu. A follower of Kuan Yin, she was very devout. One day she fell into a trance during which she saw her brothers and father in danger on the sea. She led her brothers to safety across the raging seas, but her mother woke her from her trance – not realizing what was happening – before her father was rescued. She died aged twenty-eight, but was seen many times after that, always helping people in danger on the sea. In 1683, as a reward for assisting the Chinese fleet in their recapture of Taiwan, Lin Ma-tzu became Queen or Empress of Heaven. She is much venerated and women often simply refer to her as 'Mother'. Great operas are staged for her benefit along the coastal areas such as Hong Kong and Macau.]*
Day 27	*Birthday of General Ch'e [a famous soldier who became an Immortal].*
Day 28	*Birthday of the sage Ts'ang-hsieh [reputed inventor of writing].*

Fourth Moon

Day 1	*Birthday of the Ruler of the Eighth Court of Hell. [King Tu Shih rules over the Hell for ungrateful subordinates or sons.]*
Day 4	*Birthday of Wen Shu Buddha. [This is Maitraya Buddha, the popular Buddha of Wisdom.]*
Day 8	*Birthday or celebration day for the Three Realms. [In Buddhist philosophy there are three realms of reality. The first is that of sensual desire. The second is that of form or substance. The third is that of the formless, sense-less world of pure spirit. Sometimes celebrated as Buddha's birthday.]* *Birthday of the Ruler of the Ninth Court of Hell. [King P'ing Teng. The place for murderers and other committers of terrible crimes. They have to stay until all their victims have been reborn.]*
Day 10	*Birthday of one of the gods of the Five Directions.*
Day 14 呂 祖 旦	*Birthday of Lu Tung-pin. [One of the Eight Immortals and thus very popular. Born 798* CE, *he was an official who one day, after drinking rice wine, fell asleep. He dreamed that he was promoted. Honour after honour came his way. For fifty years he was top dog. Then he fell. He was exiled and his family wiped out. Lu awoke and realized the transient nature of life. He became a Taoist hermit and was famed for his wisdom. He is usually shown holding a baby boy.]*
Day 15	*Birthday of Chung Li. [He is another of the Eight Immortals. Born* c. *3000* BCE, *he was a powerful soldier who became a hermit in old age. He is usually shown holding either a feather fan or a peach of immortality.]*
Day 17	*Birthday of the goddess of midwifery.*
Day 18	*Birthday of Hua T'o [celebrated as the first doctor in China].* *Birthday of the Ruler of the Pole Star [a favourite deity of fortune-tellers and astrologers].* *Birthday of Sung San Sei Ma [a venerated fighter and official from the period of the Three Kingdoms, 221–65* CE*].*
Day 20	*Birthday of Mien-kuang [goddess of eyes and eye diseases].*
Day 23	*Birthday of the Worthy Virtue [the festival of the literati].*
Day 26	*Birthday of Chung Shan [a general from the Han period,* c. *200* CE*].*

Day 28 Birthday of Yao Wang. [King of medicine or the Bodhisattva of medicine, he is one of the most important Bodhisattvas. His statue is found in most temples and he is much revered.]

Fifth Moon

Day 1 Birthday of the South Star of Longevity. [The god of longevity guards the start of what is considered a dangerous month. One of the most popular of deities, he is pictured with a high forehead, often riding a stag, and he holds a peach, staff, gourd and scroll. Around his head flies a bat. These are all symbols of longevity. He, along with two other star deities, those of happiness and wealth, appears in just about every shop, restaurant or business.]

Day 5 Day for sacrifices to the Earth.

Day 8 Birthday of the Mother of the Sea Dragon. [Seen as particularly good for preventing disasters to children and at sea.]

Day 10 Birthday of one of the gods of the Five Directions.

Day 11 Birthday of the City God. [Each city has a guardian deity who appoints local deities for each area. Many of these city deities are in fact former officials who ruled a city or area well.]

Day 12 Birthday of the son of the god Tai-shan.

Day 13 Birthday of Kuan P'ing, son of Kuan Ti. [Kuan Ti is the god of war and in many places this day is celebrated as his festival. A historical figure from the period of the Three Kingdoms, he and his two friends pledged themselves to fight in defence of the poor and oppressed. After many battles, betrayals and fights, Kuan was killed. He was later deified as god of war and, of course, peace. He is the patron of the martial arts. Students pray in front of his shrine before practices, to remind themselves that strength must be used for justice. A very popular god, his festival day is one for feasts and displays. See also Sixth Moon, Day 24.]

Day 16 Festival of the day Heaven and Earth united and creation began. [Chinese creation stories picture Heaven and Earth being produced from chaos. From Heaven and Earth come forth yin and yang. From these two vital forces come the four seasons, the Five Elements and all creation.]

天地造化之神

Birthday of Tathagata Buddha. [This refers to the historical manifestation of Buddha in earthly form such as Gautama the Prince.]

如来佛旦

Day 18	Birthday of the Old Royal Mother. [Chief goddess of the Immortals, she cares for the peach orchard where the peaches of longevity grow. It was her garden that Monkey desecrated when he ate the 3000-year-old peaches. She is seen as a dispenser of long life and thus much revered.]
Day 20	Birthday of Tan-yang Ma [a Taoist sage].
Day 29	Birthday of Hsu-wei Hsien Wang [a minister during the T'ang dynasty].

Sixth Moon

Day 1	Birthday of Wei T'o. [Guardian Bodhisattva who helped create the world. He stands with drawn sword and fierce face outside most Buddhist temples.]
Day 6	Birthday of Yang Sze Tsiang-kun [a general renowned for his filial piety]. Birthday of Ts'ui-fu. [An official who was much loved. He became a city god and then was given the role of assisting people through the Courts of Hell.] Day for remembering T'ai Shan. [Although this is actually called a birthday, it is in fact a day to recall the giving of revelations on T'ai Shan, which literally means 'large or lofty mountain'. T'ai Shan is the most important of the Five Sacred Mountains. Regular pilgrimages are still made there from all parts of China. Every historical and mythological figure of any importance went to T'ai Shan. In 1008 CE a magnificent Imperial procession occurred, during which the Emperor received a revelation from Heaven. This day commemorates this.]
Day 10	Birthday of the Immortal Lin-hai. [A Taoist Immortal who had two major lives. Once, as a minister, he was visited by Han Chung-li, one of the Eight Immortals. Through discussion, Lin realized the pointless nature of honour. He became an ascetic. Later, in another life, he was born as a servant. Various miraculous events showed him to be an Immortal. He is often pictured as a boy with a string of cash (Chinese pierced coins) and a frog. He is popular because he aids financial ventures.]
Day 12	Birthday of P'eng Cho [a general who was deified for his feats]. Birthday of wells and streams.
Day 13	Birthday of Lu Pan. [The patron deity of builders, Lu Pan is reputed to have lived in the sixth century BCE and to have been a gifted carpenter. In his

middle age he became a hermit and learned magic skills. These he combined with his carpentry to produce wonderful machines and creations. He is invoked whenever a new building begins and the ceremony of raising the beam of a new house (see p. 191), is dedicated to him.]

Day 19 *Birthday of Kuan Yin. [This is the second date given as Kuan Yin's birthday – see Second Moon, Day 19. A lesser feast than the earlier one, this day usually commemorated the granting of Bodhisattva status on Kuan Yin. As a Bodhisattva, she has delayed her full Buddhahood in order to save suffering humans.]*

Day 23 *Birthday of Ma Wong [the King of the Horses].*

Day 24 *Birthday of Kuan Ti. [Kuan Ti is the god of war (see Fifth Moon, Day 13). With his two friends, Lui Pei and Chang Fei, he is seen as protector and model. He is usually shown flanked by Lui and Chang and is greatly revered.]*

関帝旦

Birthday of the Fire God. [There is a whole Ministry of Fire in the Chinese Heaven and many legends abound about who the god of fire is and how he acts. A feared and yet also respected god.]

Birthday of Wang Ling-kuan [a Sung-dynasty hero now seen as the gatekeeper of Heaven].

Birthday of the Five Thunder Gods.

Birthday of Hwo-hoh and the Two Immortals [three brothers who became Immortals and are respected as deities of peace and harmony].

Day 26 *Birthday of Erh-lang. [This famous nephew of the Jade Emperor is an immensely powerful fighting god. It was he who, through skill in arms and cunning in magic, eventually captured Monkey, the Great Sage Equal to Heaven, when all the armies of Heaven had failed.]*

Day 29 *Birthday of T'ien Ch'u [the deity of the Great Bear constellation].*

Seventh Moon

Day 1 *Birthday of Tai Shung Lao-chun. [The birthday of Lao Tzu, also known as Tai Shung Lao-chun, meaning the very Exalted Lord Lao. This is the deified Lao Tzu, part of the triad of the Three August Ones. In Taoist popular thought Lao Tzu was but one incarnation of the supreme force behind creation. In his supreme form he is Tai Shung Lao-*

chun and it is this aspect which is particularly worshipped on this day.]

康公旦

七宫仙女下降魁星旦

Day 7 *Note: Double 7th [7th day, 7th moon] is seen as a very dangerous day. This is the month of ghosts and is not a good month for planning weddings or similar events.*

Birthday [or festival] of T'ao-kung [a sort of Taoist Mercury or messenger of the gods who achieved immortality and flew away on a dragon].

Meeting day of the Herdsman and the Weaver Girl. [The one day of the year when these two stars meet in the Milky Way. The story behind this tells of the hard-working Weaver Girl, daughter of the Sun. He married her to the Herdsman across the Milky Way. Once married, she was so in love that she forgot her work and her loom. The Sun was so angry he separated the lovers. However, once a year they are permitted to meet. This is very much a festival for lovers.]

Day 12 *Birthday of Chang-chun [a Taoist Immortal].*

Day 15 *Festival of the Three Taoist Principles [The Three August Ones who first taught humanity. See First Moon, Day 15, and Introduction, p. 15].*

Birthday of Ling Tsi Chen [a Taoist Immortal].

Day 18 *Birthday of the Queen Mother [of Heaven].*

Day 19 *Birthday of Tang Nien T'ai-sui. [The festival of whichever god happens to be guardian deity of the year and thus in charge of all births and deaths during the year.]*

Day 20 *Birthday of the god of the Palace of the King. [He helps the poor or needy to approach the royal throne.]*

Day 21 *Birthday of P'u-nien [one of the Patriarchs of Buddhism of the Sung dynasty, 960–1126 CE].*

Day 22 *Birthday of the god of riches. [Traditionally associated with T'ai Shan.]*

Day 24 *Birthday of the local city god. [Usually a more local city god than that revered on Day 11 of the Fifth Moon.]*

Birthday of Tsao Sheng [a star deity who guards the Palace of Heaven].

Day 30 *Birthday of Ti-tsang Wang. [A Buddhist title of a Bodhisattva who is usually identified with Yama, King of the Dead. Ti-tsang is a saviour figure who aids those in Hell. Yet so in a strange way is Yama, for the paper money burned at funerals carries his picture and his help is thus sought to ease the path of the dead. This day is thus celebrated as the King of the Dead Day, with the expectation of salvation or mitigation.]*

Eighth Moon

Day 1	*Birthday of Hsu-chen Kun. [Known as the Dragon Slayer, he lived c. 239* CE *and was made an Immortal.]* *Birthday of the Gold-Armoured God. [Chin Chia is a god of scholars. Wearing his gold armour, he defends them from attack. If they are wicked, however, his sword will seek them out. His flag brings great fortune to a family.]*
Day 2	*Birthday of the Village God [subservient to the City God].*
Day 3	*Birthday of Kitchen or Store God [see Twelfth Moon, Day 24].*
Day 5	*Birthday of the Thunder God [a major figure for handing out punishment and restoring order].*
Day 10	*Birthday of the Northern Mountain [one of the Five Mountains and Directions].*
Day 12	*Birthday of one of the Five-Ways Spirits [see Third Moon, Day 12].*
Day 15	*Birthday of the Great Yin. [The Great Yin is the moon, its counterpart being the Great Yang – the sun. This is the day when the moon is brightest of all. See Major Festivals, Mid-Autumn Festival.]*
Day 16 齊天大聖旦	*Birthday of Monkey, Great Sage Equal to Heaven. [This is a popular festival, for Monkey is both a cheerful trickster and a sort of Robin Hood or David-versus-Goliath figure. His miraculous birth from stone and his adventures in Heaven, where he extorts the title Great Sage Equal to Heaven, along with his subsequent fall and redemption by Buddhism are recounted in the great novel* Monkey*. See also Sixth Moon, Day 26, and Fifth Moon, Day 18.]* *Birthday of Chun Yuen Shih [a general who was deified because of his teaching skills].*
Day 22	*Birthday of Jan-teng Buddha. [One of the Previous Buddhas who came before the most recent incarnate Buddha, Guatama. Guatama Buddha is supposed to have studied under Jan-teng Buddha.]*
Day 24	*Birthday of T'ao Yeh [god of pleasure and wealth].*
Day 25	*Birthday of the Great Yang [the Sun; see Day 15 above].*
Day 27	*Birthday of K'ung Fu-tzu. [Known in the West as Confucius. He was born in 551* BCE *and died in 479* BCE*, having had an odd career as a minister and official, but mostly as a teacher. His writings have profoundly affected all aspects of Chinese life and*

behaviour. His own thoughts and ideas are best seen in The Analects, *his collected sayings. He taught duty and responsibility as the Way of Life. He stressed obedience and filial duty as the cornerstones of society. He has constantly been the focus of state attention. Shrines to him were erected before 50* BCE *and honours were heaped upon him over the centuries. It is not without significance that he was a major target during the Cultural Revolution (1966–75).]*

Ninth Moon

Day 1 *Remembering Nan Tou's Descent. [The god of the south constellation descends to rule over the deaths of humans. A preparatory day for this month much concerned with death and ghosts.]*
From Day 1 to Day 9, the nine spirits of the North Star come to Earth. [This is an official period of fasting.]

Day 9 *Birthday of the Heavenly Queen. [This deity lives in the Dipper constellation.]*
斗母旦
Birthday or Festival of Chung Yang. [This is one of the major festivals and it is unusual for it to be listed here, as well as on the appropriate day of the calendar. See Major Festivals, p. 199.]
Festival to commemorate Kuan Ti becoming an Immortal. [Kuan Ti's day of ascension into Heaven to become the god of war. See Fifth Moon, Day 13.]
Birthday of Buddha holding tower.

Day 15 *Birthday of the Sage of the Principles Chu Tai. [The leading light in Chinese philosophy, Chu Hsi, called here Great Chu, lived in the twelfth century* CE *and was a major Confucian thinker and policy maker. His commentaries, such as* T'san T'ung Ch'i K'ao I *and* T'ung Chien Kang Mu, *are still considered standard texts.*

Day 17 *Birthday of King Golden Dragon. [One of the four dragon kings of the four points of the compass. A major force for good.]*
Birthday of Hsien Feng [a general who blesses warriors].

Day 18 *Birthday of the Sage of the Principles Tsang Sheng. [Holy Tsang, a Taoist Immortal who is supposed to have invented writing. This is a good day to seek blessings on grain stores.]*

Day 19	*Festival of Kuan Yin's departure from Earth and becoming a Bodhisattva. [See Second Moon, Day 19.]*
Day 29	*Birthday of Great Ruler Hua-kuang. [He protects from fire.]*

Tenth Moon

Day 1	*Birthday of the Eastern Ruler. [Festival of the planet Jupiter. A time for remembering the dead.]*
Day 2	*Birthday of Chou Tsiang Kun [Wise Immortal Chou].*
Day 3	*Birthday of Erh Mao Chen Chun [a deified general].*
Day 5 達摩旦	*Birthday of Ta-Mo. [The festival of the great Buddhist teacher and missionary, Bodhidharma, a semi-historical, semi-mythological figure who was preaching and travelling in the sixth century* CE. *He is the founding patriarch of Ch'en Buddhism, best known through its Japanese development of Zen.]*
Day 6	*Birthday of the Heavenly Rulers of the Sacred Mountain. [There are five sacred mountains, the most famous of which is T'ai Shan; see Sixth Moon, Day 6. The Heavenly Rulers are linked with these mountains as well as with the Five Elements. They are also associated with the five basic colours – white, black, red, yellow and green. This is a popular collection of deities as they dispel disease.]*
Day 10	*Birthday of the goddess of smallpox. [Formerly a much feared and revered goddess, on this day she is propitiated and asked not to visit.]*
Day 15	*Birthday of the Three Principles. [The third such event; see First Moon, Day 15, Seventh Moon, Day 15, and Introduction, p. 15.]*
	Birthday of Ten Shen. [A minor smallpox god, Ten Shen is the one who actually carries the disease.]
	Birthday of the Sage Wen [a deified general associated with T'ai Shan; see Sixth Moon, Day 6].
Day 16	*Birthday of the goddess Wu-shan [a deity specifically to be worshipped by married couples as a thanksgiving for their life together].*
Day 20	*Birthday of Heavenly Master Hsu-ts'ing. [The thirtieth Heavenly Master or Patriarch of Taoism in line from Chang Tao-ling; See Section 10, pp. 82–3. Hsu was a skilled alchemist and ascended to Heaven.]*
	Birthday of one of the gods of the Five Directions.

Day 27 *Festival of the North Pole Star.*
Day 30 *Birthday of General Chau [a general also known as Ma, from the Three Kingdoms period, 221–65* CE].

Eleventh Moon

Day 4 *Festival of the Greatest Sage K'ung Tzu Sheng. [This is Confucius again. His family name was K'ung; see Section 32. Here he is given his full honorific title.]*

Day 6 *Celebration of the Jade Emperor as Supreme Ruler. [See First Moon, Day 9.]*
Birthday of the god of the Western Mountain and Direction.

Day 11 *Birthday of Tai-yih Heavenly Being. [This is the Bodhisattva or spirit who relieves suffering.]*

Day 17 *Birthday of O-me-t'o-fo. [This is the great Buddha Amitabha. The story of Amitabha is found in one of Chinese Buddhism's most popular books –* The Pure Land Sutra. *Amitabha is pictured as a comic Buddha whose compassion for humanity is boundless. Anyone who calls sincerely on his name will be released from some, if not all, of their rebirths. Those thus saved go to the Pure Land, a great western Paradise ruled over by Amitabha. Amitabha is very popular and his birthday is a time for sincerity and repentance.]*

阿彌陀佛旦

Day 19 *Birthday or Festival of the Nine Lotus Leaves. [An honorific title given to Kuan Yin; see Second Moon, Day 19. The Nine Lotus leaves refer to the nine realms of Buddhist philosophy. Kuan Yin is in control of all nine.]*
Birthday of Kuang T'ien-tze. [Also known as the Festival of the Vision. He is known as Son of Heaven.]

Day 23 *Birthday of the Immortal Chang, Giver of Sons. [One of the Eight Immortals, Chang Kuo was a hermit living in the eighth century* CE. *Various attempts to draw him into the Imperial Court failed – most notably when he died on descending his mountain to take up an office, only to reappear alive and well back on the mountain. His symbols are his white mule, a phoenix feather and a peach of immortality. He is a favourite figure above the beds of newly married couples.]*
Fast day when the South Pole Star comes to Earth and humanity; if you wish for a long life, do not harm any living creature and good fortune will accrue. [A day of strict vegetarianism.]

Day 27	*Birthday of P'u An [the anniversary of the person who founded the first nunnery in China].*

Twelfth Moon

Day 9	*Festival of Ju-Lai Buddha. [This day commemorates the historical Buddha Sakyamuni's becoming a Buddha – achieving enlightenment.]* *Day of sacrifices offered by kings and princes.*[1]
Day 15	*Birthday of the Sage Wan. [A high-ranking general who was deified. This is a good day for prayers to the gods.]*
Day 16	*Birthday of the South Mountain and Direction.* *Festival of Supreme Ruler Lao Chin.* *Festival of Lao Tzu. [See Second Moon, Day 15. On this day certain of the household gods return to Lao Tzu to report on the family's behaviour during the year.]*
Day 20	*Birthday of Lu Pan [god of building; see Sixth Moon, Day 13].*
Day 21	*Birthday of the Heavenly Doctrine.*
Day 24	*Day that the Kitchen God goes to Heaven to report to the Jade Emperor. On Day 23 prepare to give messages to the Kitchen God and burn joss sticks on the 23rd at midnight so he can take messages to Heaven.*
Day 29	*Day the North Star descends to Earth to judge. [Preparation for the New Year, and a time to forget and forgive wrongs of the past year. A family event entirely.]* *Day when the Hua-yen descends. [A Bodhisattva closely linked to the historical Buddha. She also judges and grants forgiveness.]*
Day 30	*Day when all the Buddhas come down to judge the good and evil actions which have occurred through the year.*

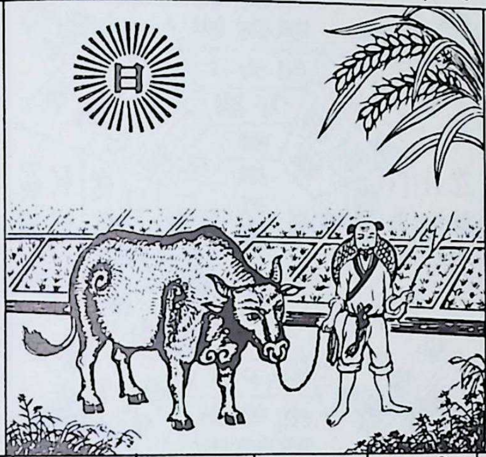
Section 47

THE SPRING FESTIVAL COW AND THE GEOMANCER'S COMPASS FOR THE NEXT YEAR

The Almanac ends with the picture of next year's Li Ch'un, the Spring Festival Cow and herdsboy, plus the bare details of next year's feng-shui compass (see p. 216). Basic details for the coming year, such as the size of each month, the dates of the Twenty-Four Joints and Breaths and basic forecasts of weather and crops, are also included. Thus the scene is set for next year's Almanac and the pattern and continuity, started so many thousands of years ago, rolls on.

丙寅年春牛交節圖

未得乙丑大有年
玄鳥高翔沿江躍
丙寅又恐慮魏燕
牛羊登坵荒野眠

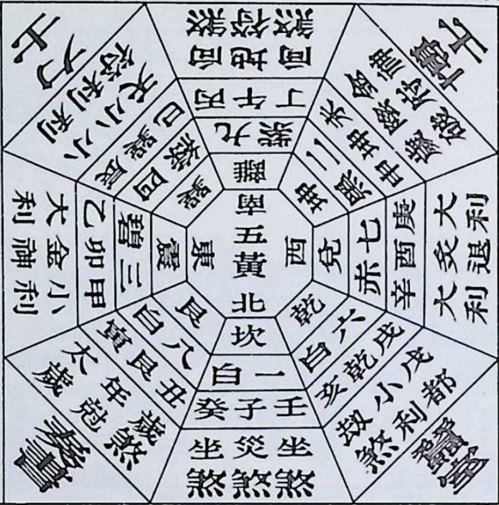


全期桑葉初破決
孩兒淚泣牛餐餓
當年豆麻受熬煎
荊楚相應稻花甜

正月小	二月大	三月大	四月小	五月大	六月大
十一日卯正雨水 廿六日卯初驚蟄	十二日卯正春分 廿七日巳正清明	十二日酉初穀雨 廿八日寅初立夏	十三日申正小滿 廿九日辰初芒種	十六日子正夏至	初一日酉正小暑 十七日午初大暑
七月小	八月大	九月小	十月大	十一月小	十二月小
初三日寅初立秋 十八日酉正處暑	初五日卯正白露 二十日申初秋分	初五日亥正寒露 廿一日丑初霜降	初七日丑初立冬 廿一日亥正小雪	初六日酉正大雪 廿一日午正冬至	初七日卯初小寒 廿一日亥正大寒

丙寅流年事歟大利東西不利北方

太歲壓祭主（乙亥癸巳辛亥甲申壬寅庚申）六生人（下葬時避之吉）


南
五黃
東
西
北
離
坎
兌
震
乾
艮
坤
巽
九紫
二黑
七赤
六白
一白
八白
三碧
四綠
丙午丁
未坤申
庚酉辛
戌乾亥
壬子癸
丑艮寅
甲卯乙
辰巽巳
大利
大利
小利
大金神利
小利
太歲
坐煞
災煞
坐煞

是年三煞在北五黃占中宮歲破在申凡亥壬子癸丑申六山忌用其餘各山俱利

分龍	初伏	中伏	末伏
五月廿三日	六月初九日	六月十九日	七月初九日

是年太歲姓沈名興天干屬火地支屬木納音屬火歲德在丙歲德合在辛室火猪值年箕水豹管局遇酉日觜宿寅日室宿爲暗金伏斷八日得辛九龍治水六牛耕地大姑把蚕蚕食七葉行雷趙元帥值年

土王用事

三月初十日
六月十五日
九月十八日
十二月十八日

地母經

丙寅爲歲首
蟲獸沿林走
疾疫多憂煎
燕子居山巖
牛羊宿高荒
蝦魚入庭牖
燕魏桑麻貴
荊楚禾稻厚

地母日

桑葉初賤不成錢
蚕娘無分却相煎
魚行人道豆麻少
晚禾幹枯多不全
貧兒乏糧相對泣
只愁米穀貴當年

春社	秋社
二月十六日	八月十八日

APPENDICES

1

THE TEN HEAVENLY STEMS AND THE TWELVE EARTHLY BRANCHES

THE TEN HEAVENLY STEMS

Stem	*Character*	*Element*	*Planet*	*Direction*
Chia	甲	Wood	Jupiter	East
Yi	乙	Wood	Jupiter	East
Ping	丙	Fire	Mars	South
Ting	丁	Fire	Mars	South
Wu	戊	Earth	Saturn	Centre
Chi	己	Earth	Saturn	Centre
Keng	庚	Metal	Venus	West
Hsin	辛	Metal	Venus	West
Jen	壬	Water	Mercury	North
Kuei	癸	Water	Mercury	North

THE TWELVE EARTHLY BRANCHES (THE HORARY BRANCHES)

Branch	*Character*	*Animal*	*'Hour'*	*Direction*
Tzu	子	Rat	23–1	North
Ch'ou	丑	Ox	1–3	East
Yin	寅	Tiger	3–5	North
Mao	卯	Hare	5–7	East
Ch'en	辰	Dragon	7–9	South
Szu	巳	Snake	9–11	East
Wu	午	Horse	11–13	South
Wei	未	Ram	13–15	South
Shen	申	Monkey	15–17	West
Yu	酉	Cock	17–19	West
Hsu	戌	Dog	19–21	North
Hai	亥	Pig	21–23	West

THE CYCLE OF SIXTY YEARS AND SIXTY DAYS

The Heavenly Stems and Earthly Branches combine together to form a cycle of sixty. The Heavenly Stems are repeated six times; the Earthly Branches five times. This cycle always starts with Chia and Tzu and is used to count days as well as years. (See Sections 2, 4 and 43.)

Heavenly Stem	*Earthly Branch*
Chia	Tzu
Yi	Ch'ou
Ping	Yin
Ting	Mao
Wu	Ch'en
Chi	Szu
Keng	Wu
Hsin	Wei
Jen	Shen
Kuei	Yu

Heavenly Stem	*Earthly Branch*
Chia	Hsu
Yi	Hai
Ping	Tzu
Ting	Ch'ou
Wu	Yin
Chi	Mao
Keng	Ch'en
Hsin	Szu
Jen	Wu
Kuei	Wei

Heavenly Stem	*Earthly Branch*
Chia	Shen
Yi	Yu
Ping	Hsu
Ting	Hai
Wu	Tzu
Chi	Ch'ou
Keng	Yin
Hsin	Mao
Jen	Ch'en
Kuei	Szu

Heavenly Stem	*Earthly Branch*
Chia	Wu
Yi	Wei
Ping	Shen
Ting	Yu
Wu	Hsu
Chi	Hai
Keng	Tzu
Hsin	Ch'ou
Jen	Yin
Kuei	Mao

Heavenly Stem	*Earthly Branch*
Chia	Ch'en
Yi	Szu
Ping	Wu
Ting	Wei
Wu	Shen
Chi	Yu
Keng	Hsu
Hsin	Hai
Jen	Tzu
Kuei	Ch'ou

Heavenly Stem	*Earthly Branch*
Chia	Yin
Yi	Mao
Ping	Ch'en
Ting	Szu
Wu	Wu
Chi	Wei
Keng	Shen
Hsin	Yu
Jen	Hsu
Kuei	Hai

年

日

2

THE FIVE CLASSICS AND THE FOUR BOOKS

At various points throughout the book we refer to the Five Classics and the Four Books. The following is a short description of each to assist the general reader, and details of English translations.

THE FIVE CLASSICS

These are often referred to as the Five Ching. Tradition states that they were edited by Confucius.

I Ching – The Book of Changes

Reputedly the oldest book. It contains divination methods based upon the Sixty-Four Hexagrams. The material is probably late Chou (i.e. pre-1000 BCE) with additional sections and general editing dating from 300–200 BCE.

The I Ching or Book of Changes, trans. into German by Richard Wilhelm and rendered into English by Cary F. Baynes, 2 vols., Routledge & Kegan Paul, 1951.

Yi King, trans. James Legge, *The Sacred Books of the East*, Oxford University Press, 1882, vol. XVI.

Shu Ching – The Book of Historical Documents, or Book of History

Much of the material in this book dates before 1000 BCE although there is considerable academic dispute on precisely what. Certainly the major part dates from before Confucius. The *Shu Ching* records episodes in Chinese history from the reign of Emperor Yau (reputedly reigned *c.* 2350–2250 BCE) to the Chou dynasty. A very important source book for the earliest calendrical material.

Shu Ching, trans. James Legge, *The Sacred Books of the East*, Oxford University Press, 1879, vol. III.

Shoo King, trans. James Legge, *The Chinese Classics*, Oxford University Press, 1871, vol. III; reprinted by Southern Materials Center Inc., Taipai, 1983.

Shih Ching – The Book of Odes, or Poetry

This collection of ancient songs or poems dates back to around 900 BCE and was probably in this form by the sixth century BCE. The poems give vivid glimpses into both the philosophical, structural world of that time and also the ordinary lives and emotions of the citizens.

She King, trans. James Legge, *The Chinese Classics*, Oxford University Press, 1871, vol. IV; reprinted by Southern Materials Center Inc., Taipai, 1983.
Shih King, trans. James Legge, *The Sacred Books of the East*, Oxford University Press, 1889, vol. III.
The Book of Songs, trans. Arthur Waley, Allen & Unwin, 1937.

Li Chi – The Record of Rites

This was compiled during the Early Han period (*c.* 207 BCE–9 CE). Some of the material dates back to *c.* 600 BCE. It contains duties, calendars and details of the Court and its officials. Of particular significance for the Almanac is the section entitled *Yueh Ling*, this being a complete copy of the Imperial Calendar dating from *c.* 250 BCE.

Li Ki, trans. James Legge, *The Sacred Books of the East*, Oxford University Press, 1855, vols. XXVII and XXVIII.

Ch'un Ch'iu – Records or Annals of Spring and Autumn

This is a very dry listing of events, from 722 to 481 BCE, which occurred in the state of Lu. Confucius is traditionally ascribed as its author.

Ch'un Ts'ew, trans. James Legge, *The Chinese Classics*, Oxford University Press, 1871, vol. V; reprinted by Southern Materials Center Inc., Taipai, 1983.
Chuang Tzu, trans. Herbert A. Giles, 1889; Allen & Unwin, 1980.

THE FOUR BOOKS

These are often referred to as the Four Shu – The Books of the Four Philosophers.

Lun Yu – The Analects of Confucius

More accurately translated as *Conversations and Discourses*, this famous compilation was made by Confucius's disciples *c.* 450 BCE and contains his sayings. It forms the most accurate and comprehensive account of his teachings.

Lun Yu, trans. James Legge, *The Chinese Classics*, Oxford University Press, 1871, vol. I; reprinted by Southern Materials Center Inc., Taipai, 1983.
The Analects, trans. D. C. Lau, Penguin Books, 1979.
The Analects of Confucius, trans. Arthur Waley, Allen & Unwin, 1949.

Ta Hsueh – The Great Learning, or Study

Written *c.* 250 BCE, it is ascribed to Tseng Shen, a disciple of Confucius, although certain scholars think it was written by a pupil of Mencius.

The Great Learning and the Mean-in-Action, trans. E. R. Hughes, Dent, 1942.
Ta Hsueh, trans. James Legge, *The Chinese Classics*, Oxford University Press, 1871, vol. I; reprinted by Southern Materials Center Inc., Taipai, 1983.

Chung Yung – The Doctrine of the Mean or *The State of Equilibrium and Harmony*

Written in the fourth or third century BCE by Kung Chi, the grandson of Confucius, it develops Confucian thought and philosophy with particular regard to human behaviour.

Chung Yung, trans. James Legge, *The Chinese Classics*, Oxford University Press, 1871, vol. II; reprinted by Southern Materials Center Inc., Taipai, 1983.
The Chung Yung, trans. L. A. Lyall and Ching Chien-chun, Longmans Green, 1927.
The Great Learning and the Mean-in-Action, trans. E. R. Hughes, Dent, 1942.

Meng Tzu – Master Meng – Mencius

The works of Mencius (*c.* fourth century BCE) are the fullest expression and defence of Confucian ideas and virtues. It explores morality at both the public and the personal level.

Meng Tzu, trans. James Legge, *The Chinese Classics*, Oxford University Press, 1871, vol. II; reprinted by Southern Materials Center Inc., Taipai, 1983.
Mencius, trans. L. A. Lyall, Longmans Green, 1932.
Meng Tzu, trans. D. C. Lau, Penguin Books, 1961.

3

DYNASTIES FROM *c.* 2000 BCE TO THE PRESENT DAY

Hsia*	*c.* 2000–1523 BCE
Shang or Yin*	*c.* 1523–1028 BCE
Chou*	*c.* 1028–221 BCE
Early Chou	*c.* 1028–722 BCE
Ch'un Ch'iu	722–480 BCE
Warring States	480–221 BCE
Ch'in*	221–207 BCE
Han* (Early Han)	207 BCE–9 CE
Hsin	9–23 CE
Han* (Later Han)	25–220 CE
Three Kingdoms	221–65 CE
Shu (Han)	221–64 CE
Wei	220–64 CE
Wu	222–80 CE
Chin	
Western	265–317 CE
Eastern	317–420 CE
Sung Liu	420–79 CE
Northern and Southern dynasties	
Chi	479–502 CE
Liang	502–57 CE
Ch'en	557–89 CE
Northern Wei	386–535 CE
Western Wei	535–56 CE
Eastern Wei	534–50 CE
Northern Ch'i	550–77 CE
Northern Chou	557–81 CE
Sui*	581–618 CE
T'ang*	618–906 CE
Five Dynasty period	907–60 CE
Liao (Tartars)	960–1125 CE
Hsi Hsia (Tibetan)	968–1227 CE
Sung*	
Northern	960–1126 CE
Southern	1127–1279 CE
Chin (Tartar)	1115–1234 CE
Yuan* (Mongol)	1260–1368 CE
Ming*	1368–1644 CE
Ch'ing* (Manchu)	1644–1911 CE
Republic*	1911–49
People's Republic	1949–

* = Major dynasties.

NOTES

INTRODUCTION

1. Cao Xuequin, *The Story of the Stone*, trans. David Hawkes, 2 vols., Penguin Books, 1973, vol. I, p. 61. The Chinese title of this novel is *Hung Lou Meng – The Dream of the Red Chamber*, the name by which it was first known in English.
2. C. K. Yang, 'Confucian Thought and Chinese Religion', in J. K. Fairbank (ed.), *Chinese Thought and Institutions*, University of Chicago Press, 1957, p. 270.
3. J. G. Cormack, *Chinese Birthday, Wedding, Funeral and Other Customs*, La Librairie Française, Peking, 1923, p. 12.
4. Wolfram Eberhard, *Studies in Chinese Folklore and Related Essays*, Indiana University Research Center, 1970, p. 202.
5. Adapted from *Shu King: The Canon of Yao*, Part 1, Book 2, trans. James Legge, *The Sacred Books of the East*, Oxford University Press, 1879, vol. III, p. 32.
6. *Shu Ching: The Canon of Shun*, Part 2, Book 1, verse 8.
7. See Marcel Granet, *Chinese Civilization*, Kegan Paul, London; Trench, Trubner, New York, 1930, p. 18.
8. *Shu Ching: The Great Plan*, Part 5, Book 4, verse 8.
9. Ssu-ma Ch'ien, *Selections from the Records of the Historian*, trans. Yang Hsien-yi and Gladys Yang, Foreign Languages Press, Peking, 1979, p. 167.
10. Adapted from *Li Ki*, Book 4, section 1, pt 1, trans. James Legge, *The Sacred Books of the East*, Oxford University Press, 1855, vol. XXVII, pp. 249–56.
11. See Ssu-ma Ch'ien, *Records of the Grand Historian of China*, trans. Burton Watson, Columbia University Press, 1961, vol. II, p. 108.
12. ibid., vol. I, p. 263.
13. *Hsun Tzu*, trans. Burton Watson, Columbia University Press, 1963, ch. 17.
14. Quoted by Mark Elvin, *The Pattern of the Chinese Past*, Stanford University Press, 1973, p. 181.
15. *The Travels of Marco Polo*, edited by Manuel Komroff, Boni & Liveright, New York, 1926, ch. 44, p. 82.
16. M. Broomhall, *Islam in China*, China Inland Mission, London, 1910, p. 71.
17. *The Travels and Controversies of Friar Domingo Navarete 1618–1686*, edited by J. S. Cummins, Cambridge University Press, 1962; quoted in J. Spence, *The China Helpers*, Bodley Head, 1969, pp. 20–21.
18. Cormack, op. cit., p. 11.
19. *Selected Works of Mao Tse-tung*, Foreign Languages Press, Peking, 1967, vol. I, pp. 46–7.
20. J. Needham, *Science and Civilization in China*, Cambridge University Press, 1956, vol. II, p. 357.
21. Donald E. MacInnis, *Religious Policy and Practice in Communist China*, Hodder & Stoughton, 1972, p. 38.
22. *Religion in the People's Republic of China*, Documentation no. 6, p. 47.
23. ibid., p. 43.

24. *The Story of the Stone*, vol. I, p. 61.
25. Quoted in Needham, op. cit., vol. II, p. 269.
26. *Hai Nan Tzu*, quoted in Theodore de Bary (ed.), *Sources of Chinese Tradition*, Columbia University Press, 1960, vol. I, pp. 192–3.
27. *Shu King: The Zah Yueh*, trans. James Legge, *The Sacred Books of the East*, Oxford University Press, 1879, vol. III, pp. 433–4.
28. See F. Capra, *The Tao of Physics*, Fontana, 1983, pp. 161 ff.
29. *T'ai-chi-t'u Shou*, quoted in Bary, op. cit., vol. I, pp. 458–9.
30. *Shoo King: The Great Plan*, trans. James Legge, *The Chinese Classics*, Oxford University Press, 1871, vol. III; reprinted by Southern Materials Center Inc., Taipai, 1983.
31. See J. M. Huon de Kermadec, *The Way to Chinese Astrology*, trans. N. D. Poulsen, Allen & Unwin, 1983, p. 44.

SECTIONS 1, 16 AND 24

1. H. C. du Bose, *The Dragon, Image and Demon*, Partridge, London, 1886, p. 431.
2. E. J. Eitel, *Feng-shui*, 1873; Cokaygne, Cambridge, 1973, p. 7.
3. Needham, op. cit., vol. II, p. 42.

SECTION 5

1. Quoted in Granet, op. cit., pp. 376–8.

CHARMS

1. See the writings of the third to fourth century BCE Taoist sage Chuang Tzu, whose book is called *Chuang Tzu*, trans. Herbert A. Giles, 1889; Allen & Unwin, 1980, ch. 7, p. 90.
2. *The Annals of the Bamboo Books*, trans. James Legge, *The Chinese Classics*, Oxford University Press, 1871, vol. III, pp. 112 ff; reprinted by Southern Materials Center Inc., Taipai, 1983.
3. *Wu-shang Pi-yao*, ch. 24, p. 46, line 3, quoted in Michael Saso, *The Teachings of Taoist Master Chuang*, Yale University Press, 1978.

SECTION 18

1. *Shoo King: The Great Declaration*, trans. James Legge, *The Chinese Classics*, Oxford University Press, 1871, vol. III; reprinted by Southern Materials Centre Inc., Taipai, 1983.

SECTION 32

1. See especially *Shoo King*, ch. 5, Parts 25, 27 and 28.
2. See James L. Watson, *Emigration and the Chinese Lineage*, University of California Press, 1975, and Burton Pasternak, *Kinship and Community in Two Chinese Villages*, Stanford University Press, 1972.
3. Maxine Hong Kingston, *China Men*, Picador, 1981.
4. Melford Weiss, *Valley City: A Chinese Community in America*, Schenkman Publishing Co., Cambridge, Mass., 1974.

SECTION 40

1. Quoted in H. Doré, *Researches into Chinese Superstitions*, 15 vols., Walsh, Shanghai, 1914, vol. V, p. 218.

SECTIONS 42–46

1. *Li Ki: Yueh Ling*, trans. James Legge, *The Sacred Books of the East*, Oxford University Press, 1855, vol. XXVII, p. 249–310.

GLOSSARY

Astrolabe	An astronomical instrument used to measure the altitude of the stars and planets.
Bank of Hell	The paper money burned at funerals, during the festival of Ch'ing Ming and on other appropriate occasions is credited to the 'Bank of Hell'. It is believed that the accumulated credit is used by the dead to ease their way through the Ten Hells.
Boxer Uprising	So called after the secret society which, in 1899–1900, staged major rebellions and riots against Westerners and their interests in China. The society was the I-ho Ch'uan, which means Righteous and Harmonious Boxing – a form of martial art. The revolt crumbled after an unsuccessful attack on the foreign legations in Peking in 1900 which led to reprisals against Peking itself by an international force.
Buddhism	Buddhism entered China some time between 65 CE (the date of the famous dream of Emperor Ming who saw a 'golden man from the West') and 100 CE. Chinese Buddhism developed its own styles, schools and hierarchy. It took many centuries before it was finally accepted as part of the overall Chinese religious and cultural scene. It now affects and shapes, and has been itself moulded by, the everyday life of most Chinese.
Calligraphy	The use of writing as a decorative or art form. To be capable of fine calligraphy has always been a highly prized goal in China.
Cathay/Cathians	The European medieval name for China and the Chinese as used by Marco Polo, for example. It derives from the Khitan Mongols who controlled large sections of northern China from 960 to 1125 (Liao dynasty).
Ch'i	The life force, similar to the idea in Judaeo-Christian thought of 'the breath of God'. It is not life itself, but the motivating, sustaining power, which finds one of its major forms of expression through the Five Elements.
Chiang Kai-shek	Leader of the nationalist, republican and ultimately anti-Communist Party, the Kuomingtang (*q.v.*) – the National People's Party. Founded in 1912, it ruled much of China from then until 1949 when it retreated to Taiwan in the face of the Communist victories. The son of Chiang Kai-shek and the Kuomingtang still run Taiwan today.

Chronomancy	Belief in the magical or auspicious powers of time, particularly days. In Chinese thought it finds its clearest expression in the descriptions of each day in the calendar as either lucky or unlucky for certain activities.
Confucians	Followers of K'ung Fu-tzu (*q.v.*) (Latinized as Confucius). Confucians follow a variety of schools but have dominated Chinese social, economic and political thought for over 2000 years. Despite anti-Confucian campaigns in mainland China since the coming to power of the Communists, Confucian attitudes still influence aspects of family life and governmental policy. There is a religious aspect to Confucian practice, but it is not as significant as the moral and ethical dimensions.
Diaspora	A term previously used solely to describe the dispersal of the Jews across Europe and the Middle East, now also applied to the dispersal of Chinese across most of Southeast Asia and to America, Europe and Australasia. This dates from the early nineteenth century. It increased dramatically during the T'ai-ping Rebellion (1850–65). Fresh waves were also created by the fall of the Ch'ing dynasty in 1911, the warlordism of the early Republic, the Japanese invasion from 1931 to 1945, and the coming to power of the Communists in 1949.
Dominicans	Roman Catholic preaching order of monks founded by St Dominic in 1220 CE. Often the instruments of papal authority, they clashed frequently with the vigorous Jesuits who were more adventurous in their theology, particularly in their attitudes towards mission. The Dominicans vigorously opposed the Jesuits in China and were a major cause of the eventual open conflict between Rome and Peking.
Eight Immortals	Among the most popular characters in Chinese folk tales and mythology, they consist of both historical and mythological personages. They represent a range of virtues and attitudes.
Evangelical	Term used to describe a particular expression of fervent Christianity. Its roots lie in the large revivalist movements which took place in Britain and the USA in the late eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries. Firmly Bible-based and fundamentalist, it inspired, through intense personal conversion, many missionaries, especially to China. It was very intolerant of much in traditional Chinese culture and hence had an initial appeal for the founders of the T'ai-ping and others who were disgruntled with traditional society.

Five August Emperors	Legendary early rulers who followed the Three August Ones (*q.v.*). They reputedly were Huang-ti, Chuan-hsu, Kao-hsin, Yao and Shun. They are seen as models of behaviour and learning, upon whom all rulers should base themselves.
Five Sacred Mountains	Those in the centre, the north, the south, the east and the west. The most famous is Tai Shan in the south. They have always been centres of pilgrimage.
Gnomon	An astronomical instrument used to measure, by the casting of a shadow, the meridian altitude of the sun.
Han	The term given to the original ethnic Chinese. It comes from the Han dynasty. It marks out the main bulk of the 'Chinese' from the scores of other ethnic groups which have been absorbed as China has grown over the millennium.
Heaven	This is seen as both a primal force, as in the creation story in which Heaven produces yang and the Earth ying, and as a term describing general transcendent powers. In its latter meaning it has two main roles. First, as an impersonal force which directs, on a purely ethical basis, the workings of the world and of people. Secondly, as the sum total of the various hierarchies of gods which reach their peak in the Emperor of Heaven, the Jade Emperor.
Honoured parent	An honoured parent is one who adopts a child, usually while the actual mother and father are still alive. It is a fairly common practice for grandparents, wealthy friends or colleagues or relatives to adopt a child if they themselves are childless.
Hsun Tzu	Also known as Hsun Ch'ing or Ch'ing-tzu. He was a major Confucian who lived *c.* 312–230 BCE. He developed Confucian thought and policy at a time when China was taking shape at the end of the divisive Warring States period (480–221 BCE). While Confucian philosophy is at the centre of his teaching, he was also able to draw upon other schools of thought and to create a compatible system of philosophy. This ability to hold various streams of thought together came to be the hallmark of Chinese continuity.
Islam	The term 'Islam' means 'submission'. It is the title given to those who submit themselves to the One God as revealed in the Qu'ran. Those who do so are called Moslems or 'those who submit to God'. Islam, one of the major religions of the world, sees its distinctive beginning with the revelation of the Holy

	Book, the Qu'ran to the Prophet Mohammed. This dates from the end of the sixth century CE. Within a hundred years Islam had spread from its Middle Eastern home base of Mecca and Medina (now in present-day Saudi Arabia) to much of Arabia, the Middle East in general, North Africa and through Persia to the gates of China itself. In China, Islam has remained a powerful minority faith, with its particular strength being in the Mongol, Turkish and other northern and northwestern areas. China has had Moslem rulers, most notably under the Yuan dynasty. Islam was also the basis of several large rebellions in the nineteenth century. The China Islamic Association today controls and assists Moslems throughout mainland China.
Jesuits	This order, the Society of Jesus, was founded in 1540 by St Ignatius Loyola. It swiftly became the intellectual and strategic spearhead both of the Counter-Reformation (the restructuring and response of Catholicism to the Protestant Reformation) and of the vast new mission fields opening up as a result of European expansionism in Asia and America. The Jesuits sought to combine Christian belief with the best of indigenous culture. The order was suppressed by the Pope in 1773 because of political fears about its power and influence. It was restored in 1814 and continues its role to this day.
Khan	Formal title deriving from the word *chagan*, meaning 'lord' or 'prince'. The title was given to the overall leader of the Mongols (*q.v.*). As such it was the formal title of the great emperors of the Yuan dynasty – the Mongols who captured China along with most of the Middle East, Eastern Europe and Southern Russian between 1240 and 1360.
Kowtow	The symbolic acceptance, particularly by vassal states, of the superiority and authority of the Chinese Emperor. The kowtow consisted of a ritual of 'three kneelings and nine prostrations' in which the supplicant banged the floor with his head to show his utter subservience to the Emperor.
Kublai Khan	Grandson of Genghis Khan, the military leader of the Mongols (*q.v.*) who conquered China and Central Asia between 1205 and 1227. Kublai ruled China from 1279 to 1294 and drew together a powerful intellectual Court. It was to this Court that Marco Polo journeyed.
K'ung Fu-tzu	Known in the West in his Latinized form of Confucius. Born 551 BCE, he died, to all appearances a failure, in 479 BCE. Yet his teachings, captured in *The Analects* and

	reflected in other works credited to him, came to shape the social and governmental structures of China to a far greater degree than any other person. He taught strict hierarchy and obedience, which was most clearly expressed in filial loyalty – that of the son to the father – and in subject loyalty – that of the subject to the ruler. His followers are known as Confucians (*q.v.*).
Kuomingtang	Founded in 1912, the National People's Party arose from the success of the 1911 Revolution which declared China a republic. Originally a left-radical movement with strong links after 1917 with the Communist government of Russia, it soon lost its leftist identity. In 1927 the Communist and leftist members were brutally purged, leaving Chiang Kai-shek (*q.v.*) in control. From then on, the struggle for power in China was between the Kuomintang and the Communist Party led by Mao Tse-tung. In 1949 the Kuomingtang abandoned mainland China and fled to the island of Taiwan. Here they are still the government.
Lamaist Buddhists	The form of Buddhism which in Tibet in the eleventh and twelfth centuries CE is known as Lamaism. The title comes from the Tibetan *bla-ma* meaning 'the Superior One' and was a title originally given to the most important teachers. Through the conversion of the Mongol hordes, and in particular the interest of Kublai Khan (*q.v.*), Lamaist Buddhism gained a powerful authority over Chinese Buddhism. Under later dynasties this was modified, but Lamaist Buddhism remained one of the most important schools of Buddhism in China, with strong links to the ruling families, well into the twentieth century.
Lord Khan	Quoted in Mao Tse-tung's famous talk on superstitions (see p. 25) above). Almost certainly this refers to Kuan Ti, the god of war (see Section 46, Minor Festivals).
Manchu	The name means 'pure' and was the tribal name of the Mongolian group which conquered China in 1644 and ruled until 1911. The Manchu's non-Chinese origin was a major cause of Chinese rebellion throughout the dynasty.
Mao Tse-tung	Founder member of the Chinese Communist Party and its main organizer and theoretician from the 1930s onwards. Mao took Chinese Communism on its distinctive path by seeing the revolutionary power base as being amongst the peasantry. Throughout the war against the Japanese and then against the Kuomingtang (*q.v.*), Mao's policy was shown to be successful. In 1949 he formally announced the

	establishment of the People's Republic of China. From then until his death he was Chairman of the Party – hence his title Chairman Mao. In his last years he depended upon the ultra-left and radical young people in the Cultural Revolution (1967–76). He died in 1976 and by 1985 many of his principal policies had been overturned or allowed to decline under the 'new' leadership of the Communist Party.
Mongols	The collection of tribes based in the areas to the north of the Great Wall, who invaded China in the 1240s and 1250s and took power. The term was also applied to the Manchu (*q.v.*), who came to power in 1644.
Mother(s) of Earth	A dedication on the first page of the Almanac speaks of the 'Mother(s) of Earth'. This is thought to be a very early Chinese belief which pictured Heaven (*q.v.*) as male and earth as female and, between them, to have given birth to all life.
Mohammed	The Prophet Mohammed (*c.* 570–632 CE). Seen by Moslems as the last prophet in a line stretching back through Jesus to Moses and Adam. To Mohammed was revealed the Qu'ran, the Holy Book of Islam, and he founded Islam (*q.v.*) as a religious community.
Moslems	See Islam.
Nestorians	A heretical form of Christianity which nevertheless converted much of Persia and parts of China. Founded by Nestorius, who died *c.* 450 CE, it spread quickly across Central Asia from its home base of Edessa in Persia. By 635 CE, missionaries were active in China under Bishop Alopen, who founded what grew to be a powerful church, although they were mostly confined to the Turko-Mongolian tribes. Marco Polo met many Nestorians in China during his visit and two famous Chinese Nestorians came on pilgrimage to Rome and Jerusalem in the thirteenth century, even celebrating mass before Edward I, King of England. However, the crushing invasion of the Mongols (*q.v.*) seems to have wiped out most traces of Nestorian Christianity in China. The heresy of Nestorius was to teach that there were two separate persons in Christ, the divine and the human, rather than the orthodox teaching that Jesus was both God and man.
Pitch-pipes	It is unclear quite what function the pitch-pipes or pitch-tubes had. Twelve in number, they appear to have had a regulatory role in sacred music. However, there are hints, particularly in the *Li Chi*, that they were also

	associated with regulating the calendar and may have been seen as quite literally tuning in to the cosmic forces which controlled the year.
Planchette writing	The receiving of messages, apparently written without human assistance. This ghost or spirit writing often carries forecasts of the future and is very popular in China where a pointed stick and a tray of sand is used. The process is known as *fu-chi*, meaning 'to divine with help'.
Saracen	The name originates from the Greek word *sarakenos*, meaning the nomads of the desert areas. During the Crusades the Western Christians learned the term from the Greek-speaking Byzantine or Eastern Church and applied it to the Arab conquerors of the Holy Land. Later, Saracen was used as both a general term for all Arabs, all Moslems and even all non-Christians.
Son of Heaven	One of the main official titles of the Emperor. It was used to show that he ruled as the obedient son of Heaven, from whom he obtained his mandate to rule.
Ssu-ma Ch'ien	Died *c.* 85 BCE. The first great true historian of China, Ssu-ma Ch'ien wrote the *Shih Chi* recording events from the semi-legendary Five August Emperors to his own day. He was both a court astrologer and Recorder or Grand Historian. His book is 130 chapters long and immensely detailed. The work established the pattern for official histories until the start of this century.
Sun Yat-sen	Also known as Sun Wen, he was the leading figure in the downfall of the Ch'ing dynasty and the formation of the Republic. He had sought for many years to overthrow the Ch'ing and in 1912 was declared President of the fledgling Republic. However, the early years of the Republic were a period of intense civil war during which the Republican government was unable to hold power over all of China. Sun Yat-sen is claimed as a hero by both the Communist Party of China and the Kuomingtang (*q.v.*).
T'ai-chi	The ultimate motivating force within the universe, and is the unity of which yin and yang are the basic manifestations. The roots of T'ai-chi lie back in early myths of chaos and order. In the philosophical thought of Confucians (*q.v.*) such as Chou Tun-yi, it becomes the Ultimate Power. In Taoist thought it is often associated with imminent Tao owing to its having created yin and yang, the Four Seasons and the Five Elements. Sometimes Taoists venerate the Three Heavenly Worthies or Pure Ones – T'ai-chi, yin and yang. The three are captured in the

	famous Taoist symbol ☯. T'ai-chi Ch'uan – the meditative exercises drawing upon this power – has become well known in the West.
Taoism/Taoists	The philosophical and structural religious belief system which seeks to follow the Way – Tao. Its founding figure is Lao Tzu (*q.v.*) who lived *c.* sixth century BCE. Its key texts are Lao Tzu's *Tao Te Ching*, Chuang Tzu's writings called *Chuang Tzu* and Lieh Tzu's works, called *Lieh Tzu*. However, these have been interpreted and used in very diverse ways. Taoism split into two forms around the first and second centuries CE: Tao Chia – meaning the School of Tao – the philosophical, ascetic group, and Tao Chiao – Tao religion – being the more magical, structured local religious expression of Tao. Taoism can be seen as either complementing or countering the authoritarian moralism of Confucianism, by stressing the unknown and the unknowable, the mystic and the mysterious. Taoist symbolism, imagery and thought still deeply influence much of rural China, as well as the overseas communities. Since the end of the Cultural Revolution in China (1976) Taoism has begun to reorganize itself both on a local basis and through the China Taoist Association. The old mountain pilgrimage sites such as Tai Shan are being restored and are much frequented. In Taiwan, Singapore and Hong Kong Taoists thrive, and their expertise is increasingly being called upon by communities overseas.
Three August Ones	The earliest named figures in Chinese history. They are mythological figures and come before the Five August Emperors (*q.v.*). The Three August Ones are seen as having been sent by Heaven to teach the fundamentals of wisdom, agriculture and civilization to humanity. The most common list of names for the Three August Ones is Fu-hsi, Nu-kua and Shen-nung. They are reputed to have lived in a period before 3000 BCE.
Town and village gods	Under Tao Chiao thinking (see Taoism) a highly complex hierarchy of gods developed. Believers see this hierarchy as the model by which traditional Chinese society sought to organize itself. Thus, the Jade Emperor is reflected on Earth by the Emperor, the god of war is reflected by the Minister for War, and so on. At the most basic level, the town governor or village elder is the reflection of the town's god or the village's god – one being assigned to each community. The bureaucratic structures of Imperial control are also found in the gods. For a new suburb to open a temple to its own local god, permission must be

	sought from the town or city god within whose jurisdiction the new suburb is situated. Below these deities come the Earth Gods, literally the deity in charge of the area in which your house, shop or factory is sited.
Yao, Emperor	The Emperor Yao is the fourth of the Five August Emperors (*q.v.*) and is notable with regard to the Almanac because it was he who (according to tradition) established the calendar. He is reputed to have reigned from 2357 to 2255 BCE
Yueh Ling	The chapter or section of the *Li Chi* which contains the full calendar of Imperial activities and observations. This is the earliest (*c.* 300–400 BCE) complete copy of the calendar we possess.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Hugh Baker, *Chinese Family and Kinship*, Macmillan, 1979.

Theodore de Bary (ed.), *Sources of Chinese Tradition*, 2 vols., Columbia University Press, 1960.

H. C. du Bose, *The Dragon, Image and Demon*, Partridge, London, 1886.

Juliet Bredon and Igor Mitrophanow, *The Moon Year*, 1927; Oxford University Press, 1982.

Marshall Broomhill, *Islam in China*, China Inland Mission, London, 1910.

V. R. Burkhardt, *Chinese Creeds and Customs, South China Morning Post*, Hong Kong, 1982.

Cao Xueqin, *The Story of the Stone*, 2 vols., trans. David Hawkes, Penguin Books, 1973 and 1977.

Paul Carus, *Chinese Astrology*, 1907; Open Court, Illinois, 1974.

Jonathan Chamberlain, *Chinese Gods*, Long Island Publishers, Hong Kong, 1983.

Kenneth Ch'en, *Buddhism in China*, Princeton University Press, 1973.

Chuang Tzu, *Chuang Tzu*, trans. Herbert A. Giles, 1889; Allen & Unwin, 1980.

Louis de Comte, *Journey through the Empire of China*, Tooke, London, 1699.

J. G. Cormack (Mrs), *Chinese Birthday, Wedding, Funeral and Other Customs*, La Librairie Française, Peking, 1922.

Vincent Cronin, *The Wise Man from the West*, Hart-Davis, 1955.

H. Doré, *Researches into Chinese Superstitions*, 15 vols., Walsh, Shanghai, 1914.

E. J. Eitel, *Feng-Shui*, 1873; Cokaygne, Cambridge, 1973.

Mark Elvin, *The Pattern of the Chinese Past*, Stanford University Press, 1978.

John K. Fairbank (ed.), *Chinese Thought and Institutions*, University of Chicago Press, 1957.

John K. Fairbank and Edwin O. Reischauer, *China – Tradition and Transformation*, Allen & Unwin, Sydney, 1979.

Marcel Granet, *Chinese Civilization*, Kegan Paul, London; Trench, Trubner, New York, 1930.

J. J. M. De Groot, *The Religious System of China*, 6 vols., Brill, Leiden, 1892.

James Harrison, *The Communists and Chinese Peasant Rebellions*, Gollancz, 1970.

Tem Horwitz and Susan Kimmelman, with H. H. Liu, *T'ai Chi Ch'uan*, Rider, 1982.

J. M. Houn de Kermadec, *The Way to Chinese Astrology*, trans. N. D. Poulsen, Allen & Unwin, 1983.

Immanuel C. Y. Hsu, *The Rise of Modern China*, Oxford University Press, New York, 1975.

Hsun Tzu, *Hsun Tzu*, trans. Burton Watson, Colombia University Press, 1963.

Max Kattenmark, *Lao Tzu and Taoism*, Stanford University Press, 1969.

Manuel Komroff (ed.), *The Travels of Marco Polo*, Boni & Liveright, New York, 1926.

Lao Tzu, *Tao Te Ching*. The following editions and commentaries were used: D. C. Lau, *Lao Tzu*, Penguin Books, 1963; Cheng Man-jan, *My Words Are Very Easy to Understand*, North Atlantic Books, Richmond, California, 1981; James Legge, *The Sacred Books of the East*, Oxford University Press, 1889, vol. XXXIX.

Marie-Luise Latsch, *Chinese Traditional Festivals*, New World Press, Peking, 1984.

Joan Law and Barbara Ward, *Chinese Festivals, South China Morning Post*, Hong Kong, 1982.

James Legge, (trans.), *The Chinese Classics*, 5 vols., Oxford University Press, 1871; Southern Materials Center Inc., Taipai, 1983.

James Legge, (trans.), *The Texts of Confucianism, The Sacred Books of the East*, Oxford University Press, 1881–95, vols. III, XVI, XXVII and XXVIII.

James Legge, (trans.), *The Texts of Taoism, The Sacred Books of the East*, Oxford University Press, 1881–95, vols. XXXIX and XL.

Evelyn Lip, *Chinese Geomancy*, Times Books International, Singapore, 1979.

Evelyn Lip, *Chinese Temples and Deities*, Times Books International, Singapore, 1981.

Liu Da, *I Ching Coin Prediction*, second edn, Routledge & Kegan Paul, 1984.

Liu Da, *The Tao and Chinese Culture*, Routledge & Kegan Paul, 1981.

Liu Wu-Chi, *A Short History of Confucian Philosophy*, Penguin Books, 1955.

Michael Loewe, *Crisis and Conflict in Han China*, Allen & Unwin, 1974.

Donald E. MacInnis, *Religious Policy and Practice in Communist China*, Hodder & Stoughton, 1972.

Mao Tse-tung, *Selected Works*, 5 vols., Foreign Languages Press, Peking, 1967–77.

A. C. Moule, *Christians in China before the Year 1550*, 1930; Octagon, New York, 1977.

Donald J. Munro, *The Concept of Man in Early China*, Stanford University Press, 1973.

Joseph Needham, *The Grand Titration*, Allen & Unwin, 1979.

Joseph Needham, *Science and Civilization in China*, Cambridge University Press, 1956, vol. II.

Martin Palmer (ed.), *The Chinese Community in Manchester*, Sacred Trinity Centre, Salford, 1982.

Burton Pasternak, *Kingship and Community in Two Chinese Villages*, Stanford University Press, 1972.

Clifford H. Plopper, *Chinese Religion Seen Through the Proverb*, 1935; Paragon Book Reprint Corp., New York, 1969.

Michael Saso, *The Teachings of Taoist Master Chuang*, Yale University Press, 1978.

Joyce Savidge, *This is Hong-Kong – Temples*, Hong Kong Government, Hong Kong, 1977.

Timothy Severin, *The Oriental Adventure*, Angus & Robertson, 1976.

W. E. Soothill, *The Three Religions of China*, Hodder & Stoughton, 1912.

W. E. Soothill and L. Hodous, *A Dictionary of Chinese Buddhist Terms*, 1937; Motilal Barmarsidass, Delhi, 1977.

Jonathan Spence, *Emperor of China*, Penguin Books, 1977.

Jonathan Spence, *The China Helpers*, Bodley Head, 1969.

Ssu-ma Ch'ien, *Selection from the Records of the Historian*, trans. Yang Hsien-yi and Gladys Yang, Peking, 1979.

Robert K. G. Temple, *Conversations with Eternity*, Rider, 1984.

Donald W. Treadgold, *The West in Russia and China, 1582–1949*, Cambridge University Press, 1973.

Arthur Waley, *Three Ways of Thought in Ancient China*, Allen & Unwin, 1946.

Arthur Waley, *Monkey*, Penguin Books, 1979.

Melford Weiss, *Valley City – A Chinese Community in America*, Schenkman Publishing Co., Cambridge, Mass., 1974.

Holmes Welch, *The Parting of the Way*, Methuen, 1957.

Thomas Welch, *The Practice of Chinese Buddhism*, Harvard University Press, 1973.

E. T. C. Werner, *Dictionary of Chinese Mythology*, Kelley Walsh, Shanghai, 1932.

E. T. C. Werner, *Myths and Legends of China*, 1922; Sinclair Browne, London, 1984.

Arthur P. Wolf (ed.), *Religion and Ritual in Chinese Society*, Stanford University Press, 1969.

A. Wylie, *Notes on Chinese Literature*, 1867; Paragon Book Reprint Corp., New York, 1964.

Journals of particular help are:

Ching Feng (quarterly notes on Christianity and Chinese religion and culture), 1974–, Tao Fong Shan, Shatin, Hong Kong.

Religion in the People's Republic of China, 1980–, documentation series, China Study Project, 6 Ashley Gardens, Rusthall, Tunbridge Wells, England.

INDEX

Amitabha, *see* O-me-t'o-fo
Analects of Confucius, The, *see Lun Yu*

Bodhidharma, *see* Ta-Mo
Book of Changes, The, *see I Ching*
Book of Huai Nan, The, *see Huai Nan Tzu*
Buddha, the, 114, 198, 202, 204, 205, 209, 210, 213; *see also* Jan-teng Buddha, Ju-Lai Buddha, Mi Lo Fo, O-me-t'o-fo, Wen Shu Buddha

Cao Xueqin, 13; *see also Dream of the Red Chamber, The*
Cereal King, 200
Chang Fei, 207
Chang Kuo, 212
Ch'ang Lao, 202
Chang Tao-ling, 80, 82–3, 88, 211
Chang T'ien-shih, *see* Chang Tao-ling
Chang Ts'ang, 17
Chang-chun, 208
Chao, General, 203
Chao K'uang-yin, 156
Chau, General, 212
Ch'e, General, 203
Ch'e Kung, 200
Cheng, Emperor, 16
Chia Ching (*The Book of Dwellings*), 49
Chia-ch'ing (Chia Ch'ing), Emperor, 35, 60, 74
Chiang Kai-shek, 26, 226, 230
Ch'ien Lung, Emperor, 74
Ch'i-men Tun-chia, 82
Chin Chia, 209
Ch'in dynasty, 16, 17, 18, 171, 201, 223
Ch'ing dynasty, 11, 23, 24, 35, 60, 70, 73, 74, 75, 223, 227, 232
Choi Pak Lai, 10, 28
Chou dynasty, 16, 18, 33, 113, 122, 171, 220, 223
Chou Kung, *see* Old Mr Chou
Chou Tsiang Kun, 211
Chou Tun-yi, 33, 232
Ch'u Chiang, 202
Chu Hsi, 210
Chu Mai-ch'en, 156
Chu Tai, *see* Chu Hsi
Chu T'ung, 200
Chu Tzu, 163
Chu Yuan-chang, 70–75
Ch'u Yuen, 198
Chu-ko (Chu-ko Liang), 142
Chu-ko Wu Hou, *see* Chu-ko
Ch'un T'i, 203
Chun Yuen Shih, 209
Ch'ung Cheng, Emperor, 72
Chung Li, 204
Chung Shan, 204
Chung Yang, 203, 210
Ch'u-tien, 201
Confucius, 40, 113, 135–8, 154, 209–10, 212, 220, 221, 222, 227, 229–30
Cormack, Mrs J. G., 13, 24

de Ursis, Sabatino, 22
Door Gods, 195, 201
Dream of the Red Chamber, The, 13, 27, 154

Earth God, *see* T'u Ti
Eberhard, Wolfram, 13
Empress of Heaven, *see* T'ien Ha
Erh Mao Chen Chun, 211
Erh-lang, 207

Feng Su, 18
Five August Emperors, 14, 29, 81, 228, 232, 233, 234
Five Classics, 16, 220
Fu-hsi, 15, 122, 233; *see also* Three August Ones

Gautama Buddha, *see* Buddha, the
Great Ruler, *see* Hua-kuang

Han dynasty, 17, 18, 49, 66, 80, 145, 156, 204, 221, 223, 228
Han Chung-li, 206
Heavenly Master, *see* Hsu-ts'ing
Hsia dynasty, 15, 16, 223
Hsieh Ying-fang, 21
Hsien Feng, 210
Hsien-feng (Hsien Feng), Emperor, 62, 75
Hsis and Ho, 14, 15
Hsu Kuang-ch'i, 22
Hsuan-t'ung (Hsuan T'ung), Emperor, 63, 75
Hsu-chen Kun, 209
Hsun Tzu, 18, 21, 171, 172, 228
Hsu-ts'ing, Heavenly Master, 211
Hsu-wei Hsien Wang, 206
Hu, Emperor, 81
Hua T'o, 204
Huai Nan, 32

Huai Nan Tzu (*The Book of Huai Nan*), 32
Hua-kuang, Great Ruler, 211
Huang-ti, the Yellow Emperor, 29, 76
Hua-yen, 213
Hung Hsiu-chuan, 23, 74
Hung Sheng, 202
Hun-tun, Emperor, 81
Hwo-hoh, 207

I Ching (*The Book of Changes*), 47, 112, 122–3, 220

Jade Emperor, 36, 200, 201, 202, 207, 212, 213, 228
Jan-teng Buddha, 209
Ju-Lai Buddha, 213

K'ang Hsi, Emperor, 23, 35, 74
Kan-tsu, 17
King Golden Dragon, 210
Kitchen God, 194, 195, 209, 213
Ku Wei-shu, 81
Kuan Chung, 47
Kuan P'ing, 205
Kuan Shih Ti Li Chih Meng (*Master Kuan's Geomancer Indicator*), 49
Kuan Ti, 25, 194, 205, 207, 210, 230
Kuan Tzu, 47
Kuan Yin, 194, 201, 202, 203, 207, 211, 212
Kuang Hsu, Emperor, 63, 75
Kuang T'ien-tze, 212
Kublai Khan, 19, 229
K'ung Fu-tzu, *see* Confucius
K'ung Sheng-yen, 156; *see also* Confucius
Kung-hsu, Emperor, 63
Kung-sun Ch'en, 17
Kuo P'u, 49
Kuo Shou-ching, 20
Ku-pu Tze-k'ing, 171

Lao Chin, Supreme Ruler, 213
Lao Tzu, 82, 154, 202, 207, 213, 233
Lei Kung (Thunder God), 113
Leo Li, 22
Li Chi (*The Record of Rites*), 16, 47, 221, 231, 234
Li Shu, 9, 13
Li Tzu Sing, *see* Confucius
Li Tzu-ch'eng, 72–3
Lin Ma-tzu, *see* T'ien Ha
Ling Tsi Chen, 208
Lin-hai, 206
Liu Chi, *see* Liu Po Wen
Liu Po Wen (Liu Chi), 10, 70–75
Lu Pan, 206, 213
Lu Pu-wei, 16
Lu Tung-pin, 204
Lui Pei, 207
Lun Yu (*The Analects of Confucius*), 113, 210, 221; *see also* Confucius
Lu-ts'ai, 21

Ma, General, *see* Chau, General
Maitraya Buddha, *see* Wen Shu Buddha
Manjushri Buddha, 202
Mao Tse-tung, 25, 26, 163, 230–31
Maritchi, *see* Ch'un Ti
Master Kuan's Geomancer Indicator, *see Kuan Shih Ti Li Chih Meng*
Ma-Wong, 207
Mencius, 201, 222
Meng Shan, 43, 45
Mi Lo Fo, 195
Mien-kuang, 204
Ming dynasty, 21, 23, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 142, 223
Monkey, 197, 202, 206, 207, 209
Moon Goddess, 198
Mother or Queen of Earth, 43, 45, 231

Nan Tou, 210
Nang Li (Farmers' Calendar), 24
Needham, Joseph, 26, 34
North Star, 213

Old Mr Chou, 112, 113
Old Royal Mother, 206
O-me-t'o-fo, 212

Pak Tai, 202
P'eng Cho, 206
Pi Yu, 201
Pien Ch'eng, 203
Pien Huo Pien (*Disputes on Doubtful Matters*), *see* Hsieh Ying-fang
P'ing Teng, 204
Polo, Marco, 18, 19, 20, 229, 231
P'u An, 213
Pu Yi, 75; *see also* Hsuan-t'ung
Pu-hsien, 202
P'u-nien, 208
Pure Land Sutra, The, 212

Queen of Heaven, *see* Ch'un Ti, T'ien Ha

Record of Rites, The, *see Li Chi*
Ricci, Matteo, 21, 22, 23

Sakyamuni, *see* Ju-Lai Buddha
Schall, Adam, 22, 23
Shang dynasty, 16, 30, 33, 36, 113, 150, 154, 223
Shen Tai, 201
Shih Chi, 17, 232
Shih Ching (*The Book of Poetry*), 113, 221

Shih Tsung, 72
Shu Ching, 14, 15, 16, 33, 113, 154, 220
Shu, Emperor, 15, 81
Shun, Emperor, 15, 81
Shun Chih, Emperor, 74
South Star of Longevity, 205
Ssu-ma Ch'ien, 16, 17, 64, 66, 76, 232
Sui Ching, 200
Sun, 200, 203
Sun Yat-sen, 24, 232
Sung-ti Wang (King Sung-ti), 201
Song of Geomancy, *see Tsang Shu*
Sou-shi-shuh (A System of
  Divination), see Kuo Shou-ching
Sung dynasty, 49, 156, 172, 201, 223
Sung San Sei Ma, 204
Supreme Ruler, *see* Lao Chin

Ta Tai Li Chi (*Records of Rites of*
  the Older Tai), 28
T'ai Shan, 206, 208, 211
Tai Shung Lao-chun, *see* Lao Tzu
T'ai Sui, 49, 59, 117
T'ai-ch'ing Shen Chien (*The Mysterious*
  Mirror of the T'ai Ch'ing Realm), 172
T'ai-ping, 23, 24, 74, 75, 227
Tai-shan, 205
T'ai-tsung (Tai Tsung), Emperor,
  21, 72, 201
Tai-yih Heavenly Being, 212
Ta-Mo, 211
T'ang dynasty, 18, 21, 142, 154,
  201, 223
T'ang, Emperor, 16
T'ang-ku, 171
Tan-yang Ma, 206
Tao Te Ching, 82, 202, 233
T'ao Yeh, 209
Tao-kuang, Emperor, 60, 62
T'ao-kung, 208
Tathagata Buddha, *see* Buddha, the
Ta-t'ung, 21
Ten Shen, 211
Ten Wings, The, 122
Three August Ones, 15, 200, 208,
  211, 233
Three Principles, *see* Three August Ones
Thunder God, 209; *see also* Lei Kung
T'ien Ch'u, 207
T'ien Ha (Empress of Heaven), 203
Ti-tsang Wang, 208
T'san T'ung Ch'i K'ao I, 210
Tsang Sheng, 210
Tsang Shu (*Song of Geomancy*), 49
Ts'ang-hsieh, 203
Tsao Sheng, 208
Ts'ao-tuan, 21
Tsou Yen, 34
Ts'ui-fu, 206
Tu Shih, King, 204
T'u Ti (Earth God), 119, 200, 201
T'ung Chien Kang Mu, 210
T'ung-chih (T'ung Chih),
  Emperor, 63, 75
T'ung, Respected Master, 50, 178,
  180, 186, 189, 190, 193
T'ung-t'ien Chiao-chu, 36
Tz'u-hsi, 75

Verbiest, Ferdinand, 23

Wan Li, Emperor, 72
Wan, Sage, 213
Wang Ch'uan-shan, 21
Wang Ch'ung, 49
Wang Ling-kuan, 207
Wang P'o, 172
Wealth, God of, *see* Wen Hsu
Wei Chung-hsien, 72
Wei T'o, 206
Wen Hsu (God of Wealth), 194,
  195, 196, 200
Wen, King, 122
Wen P'ing, General, 203
Wen, Sage, 211
Wen Shu Buddha, 204
Wen-ch'ang, 201
Wu, Emperor, 16, 64, 112
Wu Kuan, King, 202
Wu Ming-hsuen, 21, 23
Wu San-kuei, 73
Wu Tsung, 72
Wu-shan, 211
Wu-ting, Emperor, 113

Yama, 208
Yang, C. K., 13
Yang Kuang-hsien, 23
Yang Sze Tsiang-kun, 206
Yao, Emperor, 14, 15, 81, 234
Yao Kuang, 72
Yao Wang, 205
Yellow Emperor, 76; *see also* Huang-ti
Yen Wang, 71
Ying Tsung, 72
Yo Shuai, General, 202
Yu, Emperor, 33, 81, 82
Yuan Chung-ch'e, 172
Yuan dynasty, 20, 21, 22, 223
Yuan T'ien Kang, Master, 128–30
Yueh Ling, 16, 17, 19, 64
Yung Cheng, Emperor, 74
Yung Le (Yung Lo), 72
Yung Lo, *see* Yung Le

Zhen Shi-yin, *see Dream of the Red*
  Chamber, The
Zhong Chuping, 27

Throughout the recorded history of China the Almanac has been influential and popular. Here are some comments on it, over 1000 years apart:

'In all the provinces of Szechwan and Hui-nan, printed calendars (the Almanac) are on sale in the markets. (They) have flooded the Empire'
Feng Su (835 C.E.)

'They employ an Almanac much like our own' *Marco Polo (13th century C.E.)*

'Even in the modern period the highly religious Almanac enjoys a wider sale in China than the "rationalistic" Confucian classics' *C.K.Yang (1957)*

'Superstitious activities (such as) fortune telling, physiognomy, and geomancy were quite prevalent in the past...Those who believe in such superstitions are still quite numerous' *People's Daily (1963)*

'The Almanac has the widest distribution of all books (in Taiwan)' *W Eberhard (1970)*

ISBN 0 7126 1127 4
RIDER

T'UNG SHU is one of the oldest books in the world – it originated over 4000 years ago and has been a best-seller every year for 1200 years.

T'UNG SHU contains the largest number of divination systems ever gathered together in one popular book.

T'UNG SHU contains more information on Chinese folk beliefs, practices and traditions than any other book.

T'UNG SHU has developed and changed over the centuries: Taoists, Buddhists, Muslims and Jesuits all contributed to it.

T'UNG SHU is a revered, spiritually powerful object.

T'UNG SHU is presented every year at Chinese New Years to the Governor of Hong Kong, as for centuries it was presented to the Emperor.

T'UNG SHU has never before been available in any form in English – or any Western language.

T'UNG SHU: *The Ancient Chinese Almanac* has been translated and interpreted by a team of Chinese and Western authorities under the editorial direction of Martin Palmer of the International Consultancy on Religion, Education and Culture (ICOREC) in Manchester.

ISBN 0-7126-1127-4
90000
9 780712 611275